This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

1838. 1178.

THE

NEW ETON GRAMMAR,

IN WHICH

THAT POPULAR INTRODUCTION TO THE LATIN TONGUE

IS

RENDERED INTO ENGLISH;

AND THE

ACCIDENCE, THE SYNTAX, AND THE PROSODY,

ARE RETAINED IN THE

FORM IN WHICH THEY ARE USED AT ETON:—

WITH

MUCH ADDITIONAL MATTER TO THE TEXT,

UNDER THE SEVERAL HEADS OF

DEFINITION, RULES OF ACCENT, DECLENSION, AND CONJUGATION;

COMPRISING ALSO,

I. General Questions on the Accidence.
II. A Latin Praxis.
III. Rules of Construction.
IV. Directions for the Translator.
V. Rules of Position.
VI. Roman Mode of Reckoning Time and Money.
VII. The Quantity of the Penult marked to show the Position of the Accent.

TOGETHER WITH COPIOUS AND EASY EXPLANATORY

NOTES, PHILOSOPHICAL AS WELL AS PRACTICAL.

BY CLEMENT MOODY,

ONE OF THE JUNIOR MASTERS OF TUNBRIDGE SCHOOL.

Diligentia, quæ omnibus in rebus plurimum valet, hæc præcipuè colenda est nobis: hæc semper adhibenda est; hæc nihil est, quod non assequatur. Cic. De Orat.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED BY SMITH, ELDER AND CO., CORNHILL;

R. HALL, TUNBRIDGE; OLIVER AND BOYD, EDINBURGH;

AND JOHN CUMMING, DUBLIN.

1838.

LONDON:
PRINTED BY STEWART AND MURRAY,
OLD BAILEY.

TO THE

REV. THOMAS KNOX, D.D.

MASTER OF TUNBRIDGE SCHOOL,

&c., &c., &c.,

THIS GRAMMAR

Is Inscribed,

AS AN INADEQUATE, BUT VERY SINCERE TRIBUTE OF

RESPECT, ESTEEM, AND GRATITUDE,

BY HIS OBLIGED AND FAITHFUL SERVANT,

CLEMENT MOODY.

PREFACE.

THE objection most commonly urged against the Eton Latin Introduction, arises from the fact of its being written, for the most part, in the same dead language which it is designed to explain and elucidate; and the inference said to be immediately drawn from this fact is, that so various, and so very unequal, are the abilities of boys in large schools, that this Grammar cannot possibly, in its present state, be adapted to *all* of them. The Master cannot, if he would, apportion different elementary Grammars to the scholars of the same class or division; that would be an act at once impolitic and invidious, even if it were at all practicable: nor is it likely that he will sacrifice his own fixed and favourable opinion of the Eton Introduction, to the dissatisfaction of those who may not think in the same way. These are the reasons why many boys of inferior capacity are frequently allowed, in our public schools, to wade through the mazes of classical learning in total ignorance of the *meaning* of grammatical rules—nay, sometimes unacquainted with the rules themselves. These, also, are the reasons which have induced many Masters to omit teaching the "Propria quæ Maribus," "Quæ Genus," and "As in Præsenti," while others have abandoned the use of the work altogether.

It is not our province, much less our inclination, to animadvert on the opinion of those who may act from

an experience more enlarged than our own; but desiring simply to *extend* the utility of a Grammar, the general excellence of which has been attested by the public estimation for upwards of a century, our aim has been as much as possible to render it available to the advanced views of modern Education, and thereby to adapt it to learners of the lowest capacity. Hence, besides offering to the pupil the Eton Latin Grammar in English, we have retained all that is usually taught in schools, and have embodied in the Text, or appended to it, such additional matter as appeared explanatory and instructive.

In the *Accidence*, the dependence of Adjectives, Participles, and Pronouns, for their declension, upon Substantives, is more explicitly stated. The *Questions on the Accidence*, entirely of a general nature, form a kind of Synopsis to be frequently repeated by the beginner.

The *Rules for the Genders of Nouns* are considerably shortened, without infringing on the comprehensive plan of the "Propria quæ Maribus." The General Rules are confined to nouns whose gender is distinguished by the signification; and nouns of sex are quite excluded from the Special Rules.

The Rules of *Syntax* and of *Prosody* are arranged, the Latin in one column, and the Translation in the opposite column, to give every Master the option of teaching the Latin Rules as they stand in the Eton Introduction, or the Latin Rules in English;—thus doing away with the anomaly of using different elementary Grammars in one and the same school. Very great stress might justly be laid on this part of our plan, did the limits of a Preface permit.

With regard to the remaining Articles, (see Title-page,) an apology for their insertion would surely be

superfluous. They will be found of great utility; especially the *Latin Praxis* and the *Rules of Construction*, which form introductory exercises and lessons for the pupil, before he proceeds to an Exercise-book, or to read the classical writers.

The *Notes*, both practical and philosophical, are partly original, and partly selected from the Grammars of Scheller, Zumpt, and Jones, and the "Gymnasium" of Crombie. A multitude of other works have occasionally been consulted with advantage; among which we may particularly enumerate those of the Messieurs de Port Royal, Ruddiman, R. Johnson, Grant, Adams, Major, and Valpy.

From what has been thus cursorily stated, it will readily be seen that the NEW ETON GRAMMAR presents, both to Masters and Tutors, three decisive advantages, contained in no one edition, nor combined in any two editions, of what may not inaptly be named the Old Eton Introduction: first—the Eton Latin Grammar, *in English*; secondly—the same Grammar, chiefly as it is *used at Eton*; and thirdly—*philosophical as well as practical Notes*, independently of the great variety of information which is scattered throughout the Text. Thus far, then, may the NEW ETON GRAMMAR be recommended with confidence to the notice of those Masters who at present use the Eton Introduction; and with still greater confidence to that numerous body, whose disapproval of that work has prompted them to adopt the more modern system of teaching the Latin language, through the medium of the vernacular.

But the Notes form the main ground of distinction, and the principal claim which this edition holds out to public notice. It is no less surprising than true, that, of the almost innumerable editions and modifications of

the Eton Grammars which at various times have issued from the press, not one has pretended to place within the reach of the pupil the immense advantage which this country has unquestionably derived from German penetration and research. To be sure, we have expensive Translations of the Grammars of Matthiæ, Buttman, Scheller, Zumpt, &c., and one cheap abridgment, that of Zumpt; and the ancient authors, both Greek and Roman, the former especially, edited by the eminent scholars of Germany, are read with avidity and success at our public schools, colleges, and universities: * but beyond this, how little, comparatively, is known of the German grammarian! To reject the philologist for the annotator, is, in this instance, hardly consistent:—and what is the consequence? Either the advanced pupil remains unacquainted with that deep and clear knowledge which is of such paramount importance in Latin composition; or, instead of its being communicated to him in the same Grammar from which he has been taught, with the rules and examples most familiar to him, he is compelled to resort to a second Grammar, which differs, or appears to differ, so much in matter, in phraseology, and in plan, that the simple want of connexion between the two is enough to disgust him at the onset, if not to deter him from pursuing the study. A slight perusal of the following pages will show whether these difficulties can be obviated, and how far an edition of the Eton Latin Grammar can be made a fit introduction to the larger Grammars.

It may be anticipated, after these observations, that our greatest attention has been devoted to the Syntax,

* We confess the superiority of the Germans, by the adoption of their Grammars and editions of the Classics.—TRANSLATOR OF ZUMPT.

the Notes on which, it is trusted, will be pronounced free from the too common charge of mere *amplification*. Much undoubtedly is to be done *vivâ voce* by the Master, in defining, in illustrating, and in simplifying; for the rules of Grammar, like the rules of any other science, must be explained, before they can be said to be thoroughly and satisfactorily understood: yet surely something, even in this respect, should be left to the learner's own industry and ingenuity. After this, the pupil ought to begin the most important process in all learning—*self-examination*: then commences the pupil's own personal exertion, dependent on the aid of the Master, to reflect upon and himself apply what he has been thus told, and not simply to commit to memory, or to neglect, as he may choose, what is unnecessarily written for him. But bearing in mind, that the Eton Syntax contains a digest of the facts, called in Grammar the *rules*, of Latin Construction, we have uniformly endeavoured to point out the reasons, the principles on which those facts are founded. This portion of our labour, it is true, presents a different view of grammar, which some Masters may consider too novel, and therefore, perhaps, an innovation too extensive to be admitted into a work of this kind, and be made practically useful. We would, however, remind such of our readers, that if a different, it is but a more extended and more elevated view of the same subject: and if all improvement is to be *progressive* (and this alone ought to be expected), we would ask, what is the next rational step in the course of a sound education, when the pupil has frequently and accurately applied the rules of Syntax?—what, we repeat, but an analysis of the rules themselves, according to the general principles of the language? Let us illustrate this: to teach a boy that one substantive governs another in the geni-

tive case, when they signify different things—that certain adjectives, certain participles, and certain verbs are followed by this case—that certain pronouns are put in the genitive, when the person is signified, &c., &c.—we give him the knowledge of so many grammatical facts, without guarding him in any way against the exceptions or limitations to those rules: but when we add, that the genitive case, *wherever it occurs*, denotes "origin, source, ownership, or possessor," we state *one* general principle to which *all* those facts, individually, are reducible; and we not only define the rule most precisely, but, at the same time, furnish a principle by which the scholar may test his own application of it.

We might adduce numerous Latin expressions in which the genitive is found, but which can scarcely, if at all, be rendered by the preposition *of*, or the apostrophic *'s*, by far the most common signs of that case; and, on the contrary, it very often happens, that other terms than *of* must be latinised by a genitive case: "Rudis belli," skilled *in* war; "Commentatio mortis," a meditation *on* death; "Controversia verbi," a dispute *about* a word; "Honorum contentio," contention *for* honours; the words "belli, mortis, verbi, honorum," denoting severally the *source* of the skill, the meditation, the dispute, the honours,—and being on that account placed in the genitive case. The particle *of*, likewise, is not unusually the sign of a Latin adjective: Frugality is the virtue *of a private man*, not *of a king*,—"Frugalitas est virtus *privata*, non *regia*."—Cic.

Again, from thus studying grammar as a science, it would be easy to demonstrate that many, even celebrated, writers on the Latin tongue, have made a most lavish misapplication of the figure Ellipsis, from not fully bearing in mind that the cases, in all their various com-

binations with every part of speech, preserve *one uniform relation*, primary or secondary. A single example will suffice. The Messieurs de Port Royal hold the doctrine, that the "genitive case after the verb always depends on some substantive, expressed or implied; e. gr. 'memini malorum,' I remember the evils, sup. *memoriam* malorum:" but surely there is a wide difference between a thing and the *recollection* of a thing, and the act of remembering is mentioned as originating in the "*malorum*," the evils themselves, and not in the recollection of them. Philologists in general, we are told, go a step farther, and contend that the "genitive, no matter what kind of a word it follows, can only be governed by a noun substantive:" thus, "Avidus gloriæ," fond of glory, is only to be explained by an ellipsis of "in negotio, ratione, or causâ," Scheller, who always shows a great partiality for this figure, is somewhat sceptical in the present instance, and adds, that the "genitive follows, viz. in the order of construction, nouns substantive and adjective, pronouns, verbs, &c., though it may be *questioned how far it is governed by them.*" In the midst of all these needless uncertainties, how simple and easy do the above and all other expressions of the same kind become, when tried by the principle just laid down: "Memini malorum," I remember the evils—the evils *occasioning* my remembering; "Avidus gloriæ," fond of glory—glory being the *source* of the fondness; "Pudet me culpæ," I am ashamed of my fault—I feel shame, *because of* my fault. As well might we consider all transitive verbs governing a genitive by a similar license, "Percontatoris fugito," viz. *rem*, or *negotium*, percontatoris,—a position which the most fanciful theorist would not venture to take. Such misconceptions can only arise from grammarians losing

sight of the analogy of sructure which subsists between the Greek and Roman languages, the latter corresponding with, and belonging to, the Greek, and holding the same relation to the Greek as a child to its parent.

The plain rules of Syntax lead the pupil a certain way through the by-paths of learning; but the *student* who desires to be conducted along the high road to classic excellence, stands in need of a safer guide and a surer companion. Let him not, therefore, be alarmed at the idea of notes "practical and philosophical," nor expect to find in them any of that complication of detail, or drudgery of analysis, from which he may hitherto have shrunk with dissatisfaction. But let him enter upon these subjects with a mind well stored with rules, unbiassed by false principles, and determined on habitual application, and we will venture to say, that he will soon feel that both beauty and simplicity may be found even in the severe but elevating study of a dead language.

In closing these prefatory remarks, we have only to express a hope that our efforts for the improvement of youth may not prove futile; and to add, that any remarks, or suggestions, which the Heads of Schools may be pleased to address to the Author through his Publishers, will be received with the most respectful attention.

Tunbridge School, December the 1*st*, 1837.

THE

NEW ETON GRAMMAR.

LANGUAGE is the expression of human thought, in words spoken or written: the *Structure* of this expression is taught by Grammar.

The proper subjects of Grammar are Letters, Syllables, Words, and Sentences.

Latin Grammar explains the structure of the Latin language, according to certain established rules.

LETTERS.

Letters are written characters, representing the elementary sounds of language; as, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*.

The Latin letters, with the exception of *w*, are the same as the English, both in form and order.[1]

Of the Latin letters, six are named vowels, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *y*; the rest are called consonants.

A vowel represents a perfect sound of itself, as *e*.

A consonant cannot be sounded without a vowel, as *be*.

Consonants are divided into mutes, liquids, and double letters.

The liquids, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, have a soft and gliding sound immediately after a mute; as *flos*, a flower.

The double letters are *j*, *x*, *z*, in each of which is combined the sound of two consonants; as, *x*, *cs* or *ks*.

The remaining letters are called mutes, because at the end of a syllable they quite stop the voice; as *ab*.

K, *Y*, *Z*, are found only in words of Greek origin.

Ch sounds like *k*: *h* beginning a word is never mute.

---

[1] Of the Roman letters, seven were employed as figures, or marks of Arithmetic: I, 1; V, 5; X, 10; L, 50; C, 100; D, 500; M, 1000. The letter of less numeral import noted a subtraction, if placed on the left of the greater, but an addition, when set on the right; thus, IV was the same as 5 lessened by 1, or 4; and VI equal to 5 increased by 1, or 6.

C and *g* are pronounced hard before *a*, *o*, *u*; but soft before the sounds of *e* and *i*.

SYLLABLES AND WORDS.

A syllable is a distinct sound of one or more letters, pronounced in a breath.

A diphthong is the sound of two vowels in one syllable, as *ae*, *oe*, (uttered like the vowel *e*,) *au*, *eu*, *ei*.

Words are the signs of what we think; as, *puer*, a boy; *lege*, read.

In pronouncing Latin, the English generally follow the usage of their own language: but every word, in Latin, contains as many syllables as it has vowels, or diphthongs; as, *ma-re*, the sea; *Æ-nē-as*, a man's name.

Words should be so separated into syllables in writing, as to represent a similar division in speaking; as, *ho-mo*, a man; *bon-ĭ-tas*, goodness; *ax-is*, an axle-tree; *ad-est*, he is here.

The last syllable but one of a word is named the penult; the last syllable but two, the antepenult.

QUANTITY AND ACCENT.

Quantity is the due pronunciation of a syllable, and is either long, or short.

A syllable, long in quantity, may be described by a straight line drawn above it, as in *amāre*, to love; a short syllable, by a curve, as in *regĕre*, to rule. [2]

A vowel is short before another vowel, as *i* before *u* in *pĭus*, godly.

A vowel is long before two consonants, as *e* before *nt* in *vēntus*, the wind; also before a double letter, as *o* before *j* in *Trōja*, Troy.

All diphthongs are long, as *au* in *aurum*, gold.

Accent is that particular stress of the voice, which is laid on one syllable of a word more than another.

Words of two syllables take the accent, or stress, on the former syllable, as *do* in *dómus*, a house.

---

[2] There are a few other marks, besides those of quantity, which are often used in writing. The acute mark (´) indicates the accented syllable of a word, as *amâvit*: the grave (`) distinguishes a declined from an undeclined word of the same form or ending; as the adverb *brevĭùs*, more shortly, from the adjective *brevius*, shorter. The circumflex (^) points out gen. cases in *ûs*, *ôn*, *ûs*, as *familiûs*, *bucolicôn*, *gradûs*; ablative cases in *û*, as *bonû*, *tuû*, *musû*; or a contraction, as *deûm* for deōrum. — Two dots over a vowel, named dialysis, show that vowel to be a syllable of *itself, as aulāï*, pronounced aula-i.

Words of more than two syllables take the accent on the penult, if long, as *tu* in *fortū'na*, fortune; but if short, on the antepenult, as *e* in *vĕritas*, truth.[3]

There are, in Latin, eight sorts of words, called the parts of SPEECH:

1. Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle; declined.
2. Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition, Interjection; undeclined.

THE ACCIDENCE OF GRAMMAR.

The Accidence is that branch of Grammar which treats of the declined parts of Speech.[4]

A declined part of Speech is that which possesses different endings: those endings in Nouns, Pronouns, and Participles, are called *Cases;* but in Verbs, they are called *Moods, Tenses,* and *Persons.*

OF A NOUN.

A noun is the name of whatsoever thing, or being, we see, or discourse of.

Nouns are of two kinds, substantives and adjectives:

A noun substantive declares its own meaning, and requires not another word to be joined with it, to show its signification; and has commonly *a, an,* or *the,* before it: as, *homo,* a man; *angĕlus,* an angel; *liber,* the book.

A noun adjective always requires to be joined with a substantive, of which it shows the nature or quality: as, *bonus puer,* a good boy; *malus puer,* a naughty boy.

---

[3] A syllable, which may be pronounced long or short at pleasure, is said to be common in quantity, as volūcris, or volŭcris. When the penult of a Latin word of more than two syllables is common, the accent should, in prose, be thrown back on the antepenult, as *vŏlūcris, tĕnĕbræ:* in some words, however, e. gr. *unĭus, illĭus,* etc., the penult is accented, according to general usage; as, unĭus, illĭus.

[4] More properly speaking, the accidence of a word is that part of it, the ending, which may be changed without altering its signification. This may, to a certain extent, be explained in our own language, as, "William rides, and William's horse canters;" in the former member of the sentence "William rides," is represented the relation between William, *as an agent,* and the action of riding; but in the latter member, between William (of the same name) *as a possessor,* and the name of the animal of which he is possessed. So in the expressions "I love, I loved," one and the same action of loving is signified; but a difference in the form or accidence of the second verb marks likewise a difference (not of meaning, but) of relation, in regard to the times *present* and *past.*

A proper name is the name of an individual; as, *Virgilius*, the poet Virgil; *Londĭnum*, London.

A common noun, or an appellative, is a name which includes several individuals; as, *equus*, a horse; *saxum*, a rock.

Number, case, and gender, are terms of Grammar, expressing the various relations of nouns, pronouns, and participles.

NUMBERS OF NOUNS.

Number, in nouns, is the relation of a thing, as one or more: nouns have two numbers, the singular, and the plural.

The singular speaks but of one; as, *pater*, a father.

The plural speaks of more than one; as, *patres*, fathers.

CASES OF NOUNS.

Nouns have six cases in each number: the nominative, the genitive, the dative, the accusative, the vocative, and the ablative.

The nominative case comes before the verb, and answers to the question, *who?* or, *what?* as, *who teaches? Magister docet*, the master teaches.

The genitive case is known by the sign *of*, or the apostrophic *'s*, and answers to the question, *whose?* or, *whereof?* as, *whose learning? doctrīna magistri*, the learning *of the* master, or, the master's learning.

The dative case is known by the signs, *to* or *for;* and answers to the question, *to whom?* or *to* or *for what?* as, *To whom do I give the book? Do librum magistro*, I give the book to the master.

The accusative case follows the verb, and answers to the question, *whom?* or *what?* as, *Whom do you love? Amo magistrum*, I love the master.

The vocative case is known by calling, or speaking to; as *ô magister*, o master.

The ablative case is known by prepositions, expressed or understood, serving to the ablative case; as *de magistro*, of the master; *coram magistro*, before the master.

Also the prepositions *in*, *with*, *from*, *by;* and the word *than*, after the comparative degree, are signs of the ablative case.

Note. The nominative case before the verb is named the *subject* of a sentence, both in Latin and English.

GENDERS AND ARTICLES.

Gender is the distinction of a noun, in regard to its sig-

nification, or in regard to its form or ending[5]: there are three genders, the masculine, the feminine, and the neuter.

Articles are used in Grammar to denote the genders of nouns, and are thus declined:[6]

	Singular.				*Plural.*		
	Masc.	Fœm.	Neut.		Masc.	Fœm.	Neut.
Nom.	*Hic,*	*hæc,*	*hoc,*	Nom.	*Hi,*	*hæ,*	*hæc,*
Gen.	*Hujus,*	*hujus,*	*hujus,*	Gen.	*Horum,*	*harum,*	*horum,*
Dat.	*Huic,*	*huic,*	*huic,*	Dat.	*His,*	*his,*	*his,*
Acc.	*Hunc,*	*hanc,*	*hoc,*	Acc.	*Hos,*	*has,*	*hæc,*
Voc.	——			Voc.	——		
Abl.	*Hoc,*	*hâc,*	*hoc.*	Abl.	*His,*	*his,*	*his.*

Nouns declined with two articles are called common; that is, are of the masculine and feminine gender: as, *hic* and *hæc parens*, a parent, father, or mother.

Nouns are called doubtful, when declined with the article *hic*, or *hæc;* as, *hic* or *hæc anguis*, a snake.

Some nouns are also called epicene; that is, when under one article both sexes are signified: as, *hic passer*, a sparrow; *hæc aquĭla*, an eagle; both male and female.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

Declension is the mode of deriving one case from another; as mus-*a*, genitive mus-*æ;* lap-*is*, genitive lap-*ĭdis*.

There are *five* declensions of substantives, distinguished by the mark or ending of the genitive case.[7]

The first declension makes the genitive and dative cases to end in *æ:* as,

---

[5] The nom. case, or the gen. with reference to the nom., is, without doubt, an arbitrary mode of *ascertaining* the gender; and not the reason of the gender of those nouns which are not distinguished by their signification. See the Rules of Gender.

[6] *Hic, hæc, hoc*, are pronouns, that is, words used *instead of* nouns. The application of them to the purposes of declension is purely a grammatical contrivance, for the sake of brevity, to impress the genders of nouns on young learners: hence the appropriate title of *Articles*, or marks of gender.

[7] Latin declension, as well as the relations (see Syntax, on each case,) expressed by the Latin cases, are derived from the Greek. The *radix*, or root-case, of all Latin declension, is the nom. singular; and the gen., as coming directly, *è radĭce*, from the root, may be considered the radical case of the noun, pronoun, and participle: from this case are formed most cases in the singular number, and all in the plural.

	Singular.		Plural.
N.	*hæc*	Mus-a, *a song*,	N. *hæ* Mus-æ, *son*
G.	*hujus*	Mus-æ, *of a song*, [8]	G. *harum* Mus-ārum,
D.	*huic*	Mus-æ, *to a song*,	D. *his* Mus-is, *to*
A.	*hanc*	Mus-am, *a song*,	A. *has* Mus-as, *so*
V.	*ô*	Mus-a, *o song*,	V. *ô* Mus-æ, *o s*
A.	*ab hâc*	Mus-â, *from a song*.	A. *ab his* Mus-is, *fron*

The second declension makes the genitive case sin end in *i*: as,

	Singular.		Plural.
N.	*hic*	Magist-er, *a master*,	N. *hi* Magistr-i, *ma*
G.	*hujus*	Magistr-i, *of a master*,	G. *hor.* Magistr-ōrum, *o*
D.	*huic*	Magistr-o, *to a master*,	D. *his* Magistr-is, *to*
A.	*hunc*	Magistr-um, *a master*,	A. *hos* Magistr-os, *m*
V.	*ô*	Magist-er, *o master*,	V. *ô* Magistr-i, *o m*
A.	*ab hoc*	Magistr-o, *by a master*.	A. *ab his* Magistr-is, *by*

Obs. 1. A few nouns in *er* are declined by addin nominative the endings of the other cases: as, puc puĕr-i, puĕr-o, puĕr-um. [11]

---

[8] The ancient Latin gen. was *aï*, as *pictāi*; and sometimes *â* commonly retained in familia, when preceded by pater, mater, as *pater familiâs*, the father of a family.

[9] The gen. plural is found, especially in the compounds of *coi* contracted into *ûm*; as *cœlicŏlûm*, for cœlicolārum: *Æn* Æneadārum.

[10] In the dat. and abl. plural, anĭma, asĭna, domĭna, equa, nata, serva, socia, admit *abus* and *is*, as a distinction in the masculines of the second declension; as *filia*, a daughter, *filii* but dea, mula, and liberta, have *abus* only, as *deābus*.

The Latin writers, and especially the poets, besides emplo lar forms of inflection, often retain, or borrow, one or more Greek; hence some words of Greek origin have a double sometimes the Latin and sometimes the Greek is preferre *Delon; Ilion, Ilium.*

Greek words according to the first Declen

Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Acc.*	
Æneas,	Ænēæ,	Ænēæ,	Ænēam, an,	Æ
Penelŏpe,	Penelŏpes,	Penelŏpæ,	Penelŏpen,	P
Anchīses,	Anchīsæ,	Anchīsæ,	Anchīsen,	A

The plural (if any) of Greek nouns of this decl *musæ*. It is a general rule, that all Greek nouns in *s* ping that letter; as *Ænēas Ænēa, Athos Atho, Pa*

[11] These nouns in *er*, like *puer*, retain the vowel compounds of fero and gero, adulter, gener, Liber (children), socer, vesper, presbyter liber, and Cel or rejects it.

Obs. II. The nominative and vocative cases of nouns are for the most part alike in each number. But when the nominative case singular of the second declension ends in *us*, the vocative ends in *e:* as,

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. *hic*	Domĭn-us, *a lord,*	N. *hi*	Domĭn-i, *lords,*
G. *hujus*	Domĭn-i, *of a lord,*[12]	G. *horum*	Domin-ōrum, *of lords,*
D. *huic*	Domĭn-o, *to a lord,*	D. *his*	Domĭn-is, *to lords,*
A. *hunc*	Domĭn-um, *a lord,*	A. *hos*	Domĭn-os, *lords,*
V. *ō*	Domĭn-e, *o lord,*	V. *ō*	Domĭn-i, *o lords,*
A. *ab hoc*	Domĭn-o, *by a lord.*	A. *ab his*	Domĭn-is, *by lords.*

Obs. III. *Deus*, God, makes *ō Deus* in the vocative case singular: *Also*, the proper name of a man ending in *ius*, makes *i;* as *Georgius*, George, Voc. *Georgi:* In like manner, *filius*, a son, makes *fili;* and *genius*, a genius, *geni.* The common plural form of Deus is—Dii, Deōrum, Diis, Deos, Dii, Diis.

Obs. IV. Nouns of the neuter gender are generally of the second and third declension; and make the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases alike, in each number; and in the plural number these cases always end in *a;* as

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. *hoc*	Regn-um, *a kingdom,*	N. *hæc*	Regn-a, *kingdoms,*
G. *hujus*	Regn-i, *of a kingdom,*	G. *hor.*	Regn-ōrum, *of kingdoms,*
D. *huic*	Regn-o, *to a kingdom,*	D. *his*	Regn-is, *to kingdoms,*
A. *hoc*	Regn-um, *a kingdom,*	A. *hæc*	Regn-a, *kingdoms,*
V. *ō*	Regn-um, *o kingdom,*	V. *ō*	Regn-a, *o kingdoms,*
A. *ab hoc*	Regn-o, *from a kingdom.*	A. *ab his*	Regn-is, *from kingdoms.*

[12] The genitive singular *ii*, is occasionally contracted into *ī*, as *ingĕnī:* and the gen. plural *ōrum*, in many words, into *ûm*, as, *nummûm, talentûm, sestertiûm, triumvirûm.*

Greek words according to the second Declension.

In the dat. and abl. singular, the Latin forms only are used; and thus in the other cases singular:

Nom.	*Gen.*	*Acc.*	*Voc.*
Orphĕus,	Orpheï, ei, i,	Orpheum, eon,	Orpheu.
Androgeōs,	Androgeo, eï,	Androgeōn, eo,	Androgeos, eo.
Paphŏs,	Paphi,	Paphon,	Paphos, e.
Panthūs,	Panthi, u,	Panthum, un,	Panthu.
Ilion, um,	Ilii,	Ilion, um,	Ilion, um.

In the gen. plural, neuter Greek nouns have *ŏn*, instead of *ōrum*, as, *bucolĭcŏn*, gen. *bucolĭcŏn*, of pastoral songs. Of nouns in *ĕus* and *eus*, the former may be classed under the second, and the latter under the

The third declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *is*, us,

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. *hæc*	Nub-es, *a cloud*,	N. *hæ*	Nub-es, *clouds*,
G. *hujus*	Nub-is, *of a cloud*,	G. *harum*	Nub-ium, *of clouds*,[15]
D. *huic*	Nub-i, *to a cloud*,	D. *his*	Nub-ibus, *to clouds*,
A. *hanc*	Nub-em, *a cloud*,[13]	A. *has*	Nub-es, *clouds*,[16]
V. *o*	Nub-es, *o cloud*,	V. *o*	Nub-es, *o clouds*,
A. *ab hâc*	Nub-e, *from a cloud*.[14]	A. *ab his*	Nub-ibus, *from clouds*.

Canis, panis, vates, juvenis, pater, mater and frater, though declined like *nubes*, make the genitive plural in *um*; as *canum*, *vatum*, *patrum*.[17]

Many nouns of this declension increase in the genitive case; as in the following examples:

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. *lapis*	Lapid-es, *a stone*,	N. *lapides*	Lapid-es, *stones*.[18]
G. *lapidis*	Lapid-is, *of a stone*,	G. *lapidum*	Lapid-um, *of stones*.
D. *lapidi*	Lapid-i, *to a stone*,	D. *lapidibus*	Lapid-ibus, *to stones*.
A. *lapidem*	Lapid-em, *a stone*,	A. *lapides*	Lapid-es, *stones*.
V. *lapis*	Lapis, *o stone*,	V. *lapides*	Lapid-es, *o stones*.
A. *ab lapide*	Lapid-e, *from a stone*.	A. *ab lapidibus*	Lapid-ibus, *from stones*.

[illegible] though it may be useful to observe, that a few proper [illegible] Achilles, Ulysses, [illegible] and all neuters, [illegible] in the gen. [illegible] construction.

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

Most monosyllables in *as* or *is*, and nouns in *s* after a consonant, though declined like *lapis*, make the genitive plural in *ium*; as, *as assium*; *lis litium*; *mons montium*.[19]

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. *hoc*	Op-us, *a work*,	N. *hæc*	Opĕr-a, *works*,
G. *hujus*	Opĕr-is, *of a work*,	G. *horum*	Opĕr-um, *of works*,
D. *huic*	Opĕr-i, *to a work*,	D. *his*	Oper-ĭbus, *to works*,
A. *hoc*	Op-us, *a work*,	A. *hæc*	Opĕr-a, *works*,
V. *ō*	Op-us, *o work*,	V. *ō*	Opĕr-a, *o works*,
A. *ab hoc*	Opĕr-e, *from a work.*	A. *ab his*	Oper-ĭbus, *from works.*

Neuter nouns of the third declension in *al*, *ar*, *e*, are thus declined:

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. *hoc*	Mar-e, *the sea*,	N. *hæc*	Mar-ia, *the seas*,
G. *hujus*	Mar-is, *of the sea*,	G. *horum*	Mar-ium, *of the seas*,
D. *huic*	Mar-i, *to the sea*,	D. *his*	Mar-ĭbus, *to the seas*,
A. *hoc*	Mar-e, *the sea*,	A. *hæc*	Mar-ia, *the seas*,
V. *ō*	Mar-e, *o sea*,	V. *ō*	Mar-ia, *o seas*,
A. *ab hoc*	Mar-i, *from the sea.*[20]	A. *ab his*	Mar-ĭbus, *from the seas.*

---

[19] *As* a pound-weight, *lis* strife, *mons* a mountain.

[20] But far, par, jubar, nectar, hepar, with towns in *e*, as *Præneste*, form the ablative in *e*, like *opus*; as, *farre*, *nectăre*.

Greek nouns according to the third Declension.

The Singular Number.—The endings of the Greek nom. in the third declension are various. The gen. ends in *os*, as *Paris*, *Parĭdos*; *Orpheus*, *Orpheos*; *genĕsis*, *geneseos*, or *genesios*: but feminines in *o*, e. gr. Sappho, Dido, have *ûs* for the gen. and *o* for the other cases; as, *Dido*, *Didûs*, *Dido*, etc.: or these admit the Latin form. Some Greek words in *es*, especially those in *cles*, have a genitive in *i*; as Themistŏcles, *Themistŏcli*. Those in *is* and *ys*, have, even in prose, *in* and *yn* for the acc. as well as *im* and *ym*; as, *Nabin*, *Halyn*, *Zeuxin*; but the Latin form is generally to be preferred. The Greek acc. in *a* is seldom used, except in *aëra*, *æthĕra*, *Pana*, and, occasionally, in feminines making the gen. in *idos*, as Daphnis, Daphnĭdos, *Daphnĭda*. For the voc. drop the final *s* of the nom., as Paris, *Pari*; Orpheus, *Orpheu*; *Haly*, *Simoi*.

The Plural Number.—*Tempe*, *cete*, and *mele*, are the neuter forms of the nom., acc., and vocative cases plural. In the gen. a few words, such as the titles of books, have the Greek termination *ôn*, e. gr. *metamorphoseôn*, *epigrammătôn*. The Greek form *si* or *sin* is sometimes found for the dat. or the abl., as heros, *heroĭsi*, *heroĭsin*: and neuters in *ma*, from the Greek, have always *tis*, instead of *tibus*, in these cases, as poëma, *poëmătis*. The acc. is found in *as*; *lampădas*.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. *hic* et *hæc*	Pa-rens, *a parent,*	N. *hi* et *hæ*	Parent-es, *parents,*
G. *hujus*	Parent-is, *of a parent,*	G. *hor.* et *har.*	Parent-ûm, *of parents.*
D. *huic*	Parent-i, *to a parent,*	D. *his*	Parent-ĭbus, *to parents.*
A. *hunc* et *hanc*	Parent-em, *a parent,*	A. *hos* et *has*	Parent-es, *parents,*
V. *ô*	Pa-rens, *o parent,*	V. *ô*	Parent-es, *o parents,*
A. *ab hoc* et *hâc*	Parent-e, *by a parent.*	A. *ab his*	Parent-ĭbus, *by parents.*

The fourth[21] declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *ûs:* as,

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. *hic*	Grad-us, *a step,*	N. *hi*	Grad-us, *steps,*
G. *hujus*	Grad-ûs, *of a step,*	G. *horum*	Grad-uum, *of steps,*
D. *huic*	Grad-ui, *to a step,*[22]	D. *his*	Grad-ĭbus, *to steps,*
A. *hunc*	Grad-um, *a step,*	A. *hos*	Grad-us, *steps,*
V. *ô*	Grad-us, *o step,*	V. *ô*	Grad-us, *o steps,*
A. *ab hoc*	Grad-u, *with a step.*	A. *ab his*	Grad-ĭbus, *with steps.*[23]

Nouns in *u* of the fourth declension, as *cornu*, are undeclined in the singular number; but thus in the plural—cornua, cornuum, cornĭbus, cornua, cornua, cornĭbus.

The fifth[24] declension makes the genitive and dative cases singular to end in *ei:*[25] as,

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. *hæc*	Faci-es, *a face,*	N. *hæ*	Faci-es, *faces,*
G. *hujus*	Faci-ēi, *of a face,*[26]	G. *harum*	Faci-ērum, *of faces,*
D. *huic*	Faci-ēi, *to a face,*	D. *his*	Faci-ēbus, *to faces,*
A. *hanc*	Faci-em, *a face,*	A. *has*	Faci-es, *faces,*
V. *ô*	Faci-es, *o face,*	V. *ô*	Faci-es, *o faces,*
A. *ab hâc*	Faci-e, *from a face.*	A. *ab his*	Faci-ēbus, *from faces.*

[21] This declension is almost wholly a contraction of the third; thus, gradus, gen. graduis, or *gradûs*—plural, nom. gradues or *gradus*, etc.

[22] The dat. singular is used by good prose writers in a contracted form; as *metu, equitātu, magistrātu.*

[23] In the dat. and abl. plural, these nouns have *ŭbus* instead of *ĭbus:*

Arcus, acus, portus, quercus, ficus, lacus, artus,
Et tribus, *et* partus, specus *adde* veru*que*, pecu*que.*

[24] Only three nouns of this declension have the plural number complete, *dies*, (facies) *res, species;* and of acies, effigies, progenies, series and spes, only the nom., acc., and voc. cases are found. Other words of this declension want the plural.

[25] Fides, res, and spes, make the gen. and dat. cases singular to end in *ĕi* short, and not, like facies, in *ēi* long; as, *fidĕi, rĕi, spĕi.*

[26] An old form of the gen. singular was *e*, as "pernicie causâ."—Cic. *Acie* and *die* are frequent in Sallust.

When two nominative cases make a compound noun, both are declined; as *res-publĭca*, the commonwealth; *rei-publĭcæ*, *rei-publĭcæ*. But when two nouns of different cases form a compound noun, the nominative only is declined; as, *juris-consultus*, a lawyer; juris-*consulti*.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

Adjectives express the nature or quality of the substantive to which they belong; and, to make this connexion the more apparent, they have terminations similar to those of substantives.

All adjectives which make their genitive case singular to end in *æ*, are formed like the first declension; as *bona*, gen. *bonæ*.

All which make their genitive case singular to end in *i*, are formed like the second; as, *bonus*, gen. *boni*.

All which make their genitive case singular to end in *is*, like the third declension; as, *felix*, gen. *felīcis*.

Adjectives, formed like the first two declensions of substantives, have three terminations; as in these examples:

Singular.			*Plural.*		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Bon-us,	bon-a,	bon-um,	N. Bon-i,	bon-æ,	bon-a,
G. Bon-i,	bon-æ,	bon-i,	G. Bon-ōrum,	-ārum,	-ōrum,
D. Bon-o,	bon-æ,	bon-o,	D. Bon-is,		
A. Bon-um,	bon-am,	bon-um,	A. Bon-os,	bon-as,	bon-a,
V. Bon-e,	bon-a,	bon-um,	V. Bon-i	bon-æ,	bon-a,
A. Bon-o,	bon-â,	bon-o.	A. Bon-is.		

Singular.			*Plural.*		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Ten-er,	tenĕ-ra,	tenĕ-rum,	N. Tenĕ-ri,	tenĕ-ræ,	tenĕ-ra,
G. Tenĕ-ri,	tenĕ-ræ,	tenĕ-ri,	G. Tene-rōrum,	-rārum,	-rōrum,
D. Tenĕ-ro,	tenĕ-ræ,	tenĕ-ro,	D. Tenĕ-ris,		
A. Tenĕ-rum,	-ram,	-rum,	A. Tenĕ-ros,	tenĕ-ras,	tenĕ-ra,
V. Ten-er,	tenĕ-ra,	tenĕ-rum,	V. Tenĕ-ri,	tenĕ-ræ,	tenĕ-ra,
A. Tenĕ-ro,	tenĕ-râ,	tenĕ-ro.	A. Tenĕ-ris.[27]		

Unus one, *solus* alone, *totus* the whole, *nullus* none, *alter* the other, *uter* whether of the two, and other adjectives, make

[27] Like *tener* are declined all adjectives in fer and ger, asper, exter, gibber, lacer, liber, miser, prosper, cæter, (which in the singular number, masculine, is obsolete) and Iber, Ibēra, Ibērum. Other adjectives in *er*, like *magister*, lose the vowel *e*, as niger, nigra, nigrum. Of *dexter* either form is admissible.

the genitive case singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*, but the other cases regularly: as,

N. unus, una, unum, —G. unĭus, —D. uni.
N. alter, altĕra, altĕrum,—G. alterĭus, —D. altĕri.
N. uter, utra, utrum, —G. utrĭus, —D. utri, etc.

Note, *Unus* has no plural number, unless it be joined to a noun that has not the singular; as, *unæ litĕræ*, a letter; *una mœnia*, a wall.

In like manner is declined *alius*, another; which makes *aliud* in the neuter gender singular number.

Adjectives, formed like the third declension, admit one or two terminations, and are declined with three articles: as, *tristis* sad, *melior* better, *felix* happy.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. *hic* et *hæc*	Trist-is, *hoc* triste,	N. *hi* et *hæ*	Trist-es, *hæc* trist-ia,
G. *hujus*	Trist-is,	G. *hor. har. hor.*	Trist-ium,
D. *huic*	Trist-i,	D. *his*	Trist-ĭbus,
A. *hunc* et *hanc*	Trist-em, *hoc* triste,	A. *hos* et *has*	Trist-es, *hæc* trist-ia,
V. *ô*	Trist-is, *et* trist-e,	V. *ô*	Trist-es, *et* trist-ia,
A. *ab hoc, hâc, hoc*	Trist-i.	A. *ab his*	Trist-ĭbus.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. *hic* et *hæc*	Meli-or, *hoc* meli-us,	N. *hi* et *hæ*	Me-liōres, *hæc* meli-ōra,
G. *hujus*	Meli-ōris,	G. *hor. har. hor.*	Meli-ōrum,
D. *huic*	Meli-ōri,	D. *his*	Meli-orĭbus,
A. *hunc* et *hanc*	Meli-ōrem, *hoc* meli-us,	A. *hos* et *has*	Meli-ōres, *hæc* meli-ōra,
V. *ô*	Meli-or, *et* meli-us,	V. *ô*	Meli-ōres, *et* meli-ōra,
A. *ab hoc, hâc, hoc*	Meli-ōre, *vel* meli-ōri.	A. *ab his*	Meli-orĭbus.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. *hic, hæc, hoc*	Fel-ix,	N. *hi* et *hæ*	Felī-ces, *hæc* feli-cia,[29]
G. *hujus*	Felī-cis,	G. *hor. har. hor.*	Feli-cium,
D. *huic*	Felī-ci,	D. *his*	Feli-cĭbus,
A. *hunc* et *hanc*	Felī-cem, *hoc* fel-ix,	A. *hos* et *has*	Felī-ces, *hæc* feli-cia,
V. *ô*	Fel-ix,	V. *ô*	Felī-ces, *et* feli-cia,
A. *ab hoc, hâc, hoc*	Felī-ce, *vel* felī-ci.[28]	A. *ab his*	Feli-cĭbus.

[28] *Participles of* one termination, e. gr. amans, monens, make the

Ambo, both, and *duo*, two, are nouns adjective; and are thus declined in the plural number only:

Nom.	Amb-o,	amb-æ,	amb-o,	*both.*
Gen.	Amb-ōrum,	amb-ārum,	amb-ōrum,	*of both.*
Dat.	Amb-ōbus,	amb-ābus,	amb-ōbus,	*to both.*
Acc.	Amb-os,	amb-as,	amb-o,	*both.*
Voc.	Amb-o,	amb-æ,	amb-o,	*both.*
Abl.	Amb-ōbus,	amb-ābus,	amb-ōbus,	*with both.*

Tres, three, is declined like the plural of *tristis*.[30]

Plus, more, is a substantive in the singular number, wanting the dative and vocative cases; but in the plural it is an adjective, and thus declined:

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. *hi* et *hæ*	Plures, *hæc* plura,	A. *hos* et *has*	Plures, *hæc* plura,
G. *hor.* *har. hor.*	Plurium,	V. *ô*	Plures, *et* plura,
D. *his*	Plurĭbus.	A. *ab his*	Plurĭbus.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three degrees of signification, or comparison; the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.[31]

I. The positive denotes the quality of a thing absolutely; as *doctus*, learned, *brevis*, short.

II. The comparative increases, or lessens, the quality; and is formed of the first case of the positive that ends in *i*, by

---

abl. singular in *e* only; but, when converted into (participial) adjectives, in *e* or *i*, as patiens, patient, *patiente* or *patienti*. The following have *e* only—compounds of pes, as bipes, tripes; of corpus, as tricorpor (three-bodied); of color, as concŏlor; compos, impos, hospes, sospes, pauper, superstes.

[29] In the neuter plural *vetus* makes *vetĕra*; *dives*, divĭtis, *ditia*, a contraction from divitia. *Bipes*, and the adjectives specified in the preceding note, want the neuter altogether.

[30] *Tres*, three, and *duo*, two, are numeral adjectives.—In regard to the signification of adjectives, some denote number, *generally*, e. gr. *multi*, many, *pauci*, a few; others *definitely*, as *unus*, one, *duo*, two, &c. The latter, denominated numeral or restrictive adjectives, are of several kinds. 1. The cardinal (from *cardo*, *cardĭnis*, a hinge,) express the principal numbers, as being those on which the other numerals hinge or rest, as *unus*, one. 2. The ordinal denote number in succession, as *secundus*, the second. 3. The distributive signify how many to each, as *singŭli* one by one, one each, or one a-piece. 4. The multiplicative denote how many fold, as *duplex*, twofold. 5. The proportional express how many times more, as *duplus*, twice as much. 6. The adverbial answer to the question, how many times? as *ter*, three times, or thrice.

[31] Those adjectives only are compared whose signification can be increased, or diminished; and these generally have the three degrees of

adding thereto *-or* in the masculine and feminine genders, and *-us* in the neuter: as, of

Doctus, gen. *docti*, is formed *hic et hæc doctior*, *hoc doctius*, more learned: of

Brevis, dat. *brevi*, is formed *hic et hæc brevior*, *hoc brevius*, shorter, or more short.

III. The superlative increases, or diminishes, the signification or comparison, to the greatest degree; and is formed of the first case of the positive that ends in *i*, by adding thereto *-ĕsimus*: as, of

Gen. *docti*, is formed *doctissĭmus*, most learned.

Dat. *brevi*, is formed *brevissĭmus*, shortest, or most short.

Note. Many adjectives vary from these general rules; as,

Bonus,	good;	*melior*,	better;	*optĭmus*,	best.
Malus,	bad;	*pejor*,	worse;	*pessĭmus*,	worst.
Magnus,	great;	*major*,	greater;	*maxĭmus*,	greatest.
Parvus,	little;	*minor*,	less;	*minĭmus*,	least.
Multus,	much;	*plus*,	more;	*plurĭmus*,	most.
Dives,	rich;	*ditior*,	more rich;	*ditissĭmus*,	most rich.
Nequam,	wicked;	*nequior*,	more wicked;	*nequissĭmus*,	most wicked.

Externus, outward; *exterior*, more outward; *extrēmus*, vel *extĭmus*, uttermost, or most outward.

Infĕrus, low; *inferior*, lower, or more low; *infĭmus*, vel *imus*, lowest, or most low.

Supĕrus, high; *superior*, higher, or more high; *suprēmus*, vel *summus*, highest, or most high.

Intus, inward; *interior*, more inward; *intĭmus*, innermost, or most inward.

Juvĕnis, young; *junior*, younger, or more young.[32]

Senex, old; *senior*, older, or more old.[32]

Prior, former; *primus*, first.

Propior, nearer; *proxĭmus*, nearest, or most near.

Ulterior, farther; *ultĭmus*, last.—With some others.[33]

---

comparison. But it must be constantly borne in mind, that of the Latin adjectives capable of comparison, the comparative degree of some, and the superlative degree of others, *not being found in classical authors*, are pronounced on that account obsolete or defective: thus *ingens* great, *ingentior*, is read without the superlative, and *sacer* sacred, *sacerrimus*, without the comparative. In some words of this sort, indeed, the positive only is read, as *almus*, gracious. See below, Note 33, *d*.

[32] "Natu minĭmus," the youngest, and "natu maxĭmus," the oldest, may be reckoned equivalent superlatives — the former of *juvĕnis*, young, and the latter of *senex*, old.

[33] Amongst these "other" adjectives may be considered the following, *which are* either irregular, or defective, in their comparison: —

Adjectives ending in *er*, form the superlative degree from the nominative case, by adding *-rĭmus:* as, of *pulcher*, fair, *pulcher-rĭmus*, fairest, or, most fair.

Adjectives ending in *lis*, form the superlative degree according to the general rule: as, of *utĭlis*, useful, dat. *utĭli*, is formed *utili-ssĭmus*, most useful:

Except the following, which change *is* into *-lĭmus:* as,

Agĭl-is,	nimble;	*agil-lĭmus*,	nimblest, or, most nimble.
Facĭl-is,	easy;	*facil-lĭmus*,	easiest, or, most easy.
Gracĭl-is,	slender;	*gracil-lĭmus*,	slenderest, or, most slender.
Humĭl-is,	low;	*humil-lĭmus*,	lowest, or, most low.
Simĭl-is,	like;	*simil-lĭmus*,	likest, or, most like.

Also, If a vowel comes before *us* (except *quus*) in the nominative case of an adjective, the comparison is made by *magis* more, and *maxĭmè* most: as, *pius*, godly; *magis pius*, more godly; *maxĭmè pius*, most godly.

Positives are variously declined. Comparatives, *plus* alone excepted, are declined like *melior*, and superlatives like *bonus*.

OF A PRONOUN.

A pronoun is used *instead of* a noun, and, like the noun, is either a substantive, or an adjective.

There are fifteen pronouns:

Ego,	I;	*ipse*,	himself;	*suus*,	his;
tu,	thou, *or*, you;	*iste*,	that;	*noster*,	ours;
ille,	he;	*hic*,	this;	*vester*,	yours;
is,	he;	*meus*,	mine;	*nostras*,	of our country;
sui,	of himself;	*tuus*,	thine;	*vestras*,	of your country.

I. Irregular. *a.* Adjectives in *dicus*, *ficus*, *loquus*, *volus*, change *us* into *entior* for the comparative, and into *entissĭmus* for the superlative: benevŏlus, benevolentior, benevolentissĭmus.

b. Irregular in the superlative — dexter, dextĭmus; matūrus, maturrĭmus (and maturissĭmus); sinister, sinistĭmus; vetus, veterrĭmus.

II. Defective. *a. Defective in the positive* — citerior, citĭmus; deterior, deterrĭmus; ocyor, ocyssĭmus; potior, potissĭmus.

b. Defective in the comparative — bellus, diversus, fidus, inclўtus, invictus, invītus, meritus, mellītus, novus, nupĕrus, (nuperrĭmus,) par, persuasus, sacer.

c. Defective in the superlative — adolescens, ingens, diuturnus, pronus, satur, opīmus; most adjectives in *ilis*, *ālis*, *bilis;* arcānus, declīvis, proclīvis, longinquus, propinquus.

d. Many adjectives, from the very nature of their meaning, do not admit comparison: as, those which denote the highest or lowest degree of the quality, *princeps* chief, *ater* coal-black; adjectives of number and of measure, as *primus*, *unciālis* (of an inch); with a multitude of others, as almus, aprīcus, claudus, dispar, memor, mirus, salvus, rudis, etc., which must be left to the scholar's own observation.

To these may be added their compounds, *egŏmet*, I myself, *tute*, thou thyself, *i'dem*, the same; also the relative *qui*, who, or what; and *cujas*, of what country.

Ego, *tu*, *sui*, are pronouns substantive; the rest are adjective pronouns.[34]

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

Pronouns, in general, are declined like nouns: but *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*; *qui*, *quis*; with their compounds; have forms of declension, peculiar to themselves.

Ego, *tu*, *sui*, are pronouns substantive, and are thus declined.

Singular.			*Plural.*		
Nom.	Ego,	*I*,	Nom.	Nos,	*we*,
Gen.	Mei,	*of me*,	Gen.	Nostr-ûm,	*vel* -i, *of us*,
Dat.	Mihi,	*to me*,	Dat.	Nobis,	*to us*,
Acc.	Me,	*me*,	Acc.	Nos,	*us*,
Voc.	—		Voc.	—	
Abl.	Me, *from*, or, *by me*.		Abl.	Nobis, *from*, or, *by us*.	

Singular.			*Plural.*		
Nom.	Tu,	*thou*, or, *you*,	Nom.	Vos,	*ye*, or, *you*, [*you*,
Gen.	Tui,	*of thee*, or, *you*,	Gen.	Vestr-ûm,	*vel*-i, *of ye*, or,
Dat.	Tibi,	*to thee*, or, *you*,	Dat.	Vobis,	*to ye*, or, *you*,
Acc.	Te,	*thee*, or, *you*,	Acc.	Vos,	*ye*, or, *you*,
Voc.	*ô* Tu,	*o thou*, or, *you*,	Voc.	*ô* Vos,	*o ye*,
Abl.	Te,	*with thee*, or, *you*.	Abl.	Vobis,	*with ye*, or, *you*.

Sui, of himself, herself, itself, themselves, has no nominative or vocative case, and is thus declined.

Singular and *Plural.*

Gen.	Sui,	*of himself*,	} *herself*, *itself*, *themselves*, *&c.*
Dat.	Sibi,	*to himself*,	
Acc.	Se,	*himself*,	
Abl.	Se,	*by himself*,	

Ille he, *illa* she, and *iste* that, are thus declined:

---

[34] To the pronouns are given other names according to their various uses. Those applied to persons, *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, are named personal: the demonstrative, *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, point out, as it were, the person or thing referred to: the relative, *qui*, always bears a close relation to some word or words immediately preceding it: the interrogative, *quis*, is used in asking a question: the possessive pronouns, *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, imply property, or possession: *nostras*, *vestras*, and *cujas*, are called gentile or patrial, because they signify to what nation or country a person belongs.

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Ille,	ill-a,	ill-ud,	Ill-i,	ill-æ,	ill-a,
G.	Ill-ius,			Ill-ōrum,	ill-ārum,	ill-ōrum,
D.	Ill-i,			Ill-is,		
A.	Ill-um,	ill-am,	ill-ud,	Ill-os,	ill-as,	ill-a,
V.	—			—		
A.	Ill-o,	ill-â,	ill-o.	Ill-is,		

In like mannĕr is also declined *ipse* he himself; except that the nom. and the acc. cases singular make *ipsum* in the neuter gender.

Is he, she, or that; and *qui* who, are thus declined:

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Is,	ea,	id,	Ii,	eæ,	ea,
Gen.	Ejus,			Eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum,
Dat.	Ei,			Iis, *vel*, eis,		
Acc.	Eum,	eam,	id,	Eos,	eas,	ea,
Voc.	—			—		
Abl.	Eo,	eâ,	eo.	Iis, *vel*, eis.		

In like manner also is declined its compound, *i'dem* the same; as, nom. *i'dem, eădem, id'em;* gen. *ejusdem;* dat. *eīdem;* acc. *eundem, eandem, id'em, etc.*

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Qui,	quæ,	quod,	Qui,	quæ,	quæ,
Gen.	Cujus,			Quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
Dat.	Cui,			Quibus, *vel*, queis,		
Acc.	Quem,	quam,	quod,	Quos,	quas,	quæ,
Voc.	—			—		
Abl.	Quo,	quâ,	quo *vel* quî.	Quibus, *vel*, queis.		

Quicunque, whosover, is declined like *qui;* but the other compounds of *qui* make both *quid* and *quod*, in the neuter gender, singular number. — *Quidam*, a certain one, has in the accusative singular *quendam, quandam, quiddam* or *quoddam;* and in the genitive plural *quorundam, quarundam, quorundam.*

Quis, quæ, quid, or *quod*, who, or what, is declined like *qui;* as are also *alĭquis*, and other compounds of *quis:* these for the most part make the feminine gender of the nom. case singular, and the neuter of the nom. and acc. cases plural, in *qua.*

Quisquis, whosoever, is thus declined:

Nom.	Quisquis,	——— quidquid, *or* quicquid,
Acc.	———	——— quidquid, *or* quicquid,
Abl.	Quoquo,	quaquâ, quoquo.

Meus, *tuus*, *suus*, are declined like *bonus*, except that *meus* makes *mi*, *mea*, *meum*, in the voc. case singular; and *tuus*, *suus*, with many other pronouns, have no vocative case.

Nostras, *vestras*, and *cujas*, are declined, nom. *nostras*; gen. *nostrā-tis*,—like *felix*.

OF A VERB.

A verb is that which is declared concerning the subject,[35] and signifies either the *action*, or *being*, of a thing.

Of verbs there are two forms, or *voices*:

1. The active, ending in *o*, which expresses an action performed;[36] as *amo*, I love, or, I *perform* the action of loving.

2. The passive, ending in *or*, which commonly denotes an action received or suffered; as *amor*, I am loved, or, I *suffer* the action of being loved.

That which performs the action is called the agent; and that which suffers the action, the patient.

Of verbs ending in *o*, some are actives transitive, as, *vinco* I conquer; and these, by changing *o* into *or*, become verbs passive, as, *vincor* I am conquered: some are named neuters and intransitives, as, *gaudeo*, I am glad; and these are never made passives.

Some verbs ending in *or* are called deponents, and have an active signification, as, *loquor*, I speak; and some few are neuters, as, *glorior*, I boast.

Note 1. That verbs neuter ending in *or*, and verbs deponent, are declined like verbs passive, but with gerunds and supines, like verbs active.

2. A verb is called transitive when the action passes on to the noun following in the accusative case; as, *vinco te*, I conquer thee; *venĕror Deum*, I worship God.

---

[35] The subject and verb are essential to every sentence, that is, no sentence can be made without them: and since one of the parts of speech, namely, the verb, is universally the same kind of word in all sentences, it has been denominated by way of eminence VERBUM, *the word*, or according to the Eton Grammar, the "chief word in every sentence."

[36] A very few verbs in *o* imply an action *received*: as *vapŭlo*, I am *beaten; veneo*, I am sold; *exŭlo*, I am banished.

3. A verb is called intransitive, or neuter, when the action does not pass on; as, *curro*, I run, *glorior*, I boast: or when the object of the action is not in the accusative case; as, *parcit amīcis*, he spares his friends—a dative.

4. Verbs that have different persons, are called verbs personal; as, *ego amo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou lovest: and such as have not different persons, that is, the third person singular only, are called verbs impersonal; as, *tædet*, it irketh, *oportet*, it behoveth.

Mood, tense, number, and person, are grammatical terms, which denote the various relations of the verb.

OF MOODS.

There are five moods, or forms of showing the manner in which the verbal action, or state, is represented.

The indicative mood either declares a thing absolutely, as, *ego amo*, I do love; or asks a question, as, *amas tu*, dost thou love?

The imperative mood commands or entreats, as, *veni hùc*, come hither; *parce mihi*, spare me: it is also known by the sign *let*; as, *eāmus*, let us go.

The potential mood signifies *power*, or *duty*; and is commonly known by these signs, *may*, *can*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*, or, *ought*; as, *amem*, I may love; *amavissem*, I should have loved; and the like.

The subjunctive mood differs from the potential only, as it is subjoined to another verb going before it in the same sentence; and has always some conjunction, or indefinite word, joined to it; as, *eram miser cùm amārem*, I was a wretch when I loved: *nescio qualis sit*, I know not what sort of a man he is.

The infinitive mood has neither number, person, nor nominative case before it; and is known commonly by the sign *to*; as, *amāre*, to love.

A finite verb is a verb of any mood but the infinitive.

OF GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

Verbs have three gerunds, ending in *di*, *do*, *dum*, which have commonly an active signification; as, *amandi*, of loving; *amando*, in loving; *amandum*, to love.

The supines of verbs are two: the one ending in *um*, which signifies actively, as, *eo amātum*, I go to love; the other ending in *u*, and having for the most part a passive signification, as, *difficĭlis amātu*, hard to be loved.

OF THE TENSES OF VERBS.

In verbs there are five tenses, or forms of distinguishing time.

1. The present tense speaks of a thing present, or now doing; as, *amo*, I love, or, am loving.

2. The preterimperfect tense speaks of an action that was doing at some time past, but not yet ended; as, *amābam*, I did love, or, was loving.[37]

3. The preterperfect tense speaks of an action lately done; as, *amāvi*, I have loved.

4. The preterpluperfect tense refers to an action done at some time past, before another action also done; as, *amavĕram*, I had loved.

5. The future tense speaks of an action to be done hereafter; as, *amābo*, I shall, or, will love.

OF NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

Number, in verbs, shows of how many things the verbal action, or state, is declared. Person specifies the relation of the verb to its nominative case or subject.

Verbs have two numbers, the singular and the plural, like unto nouns, and three persons in each number; as,

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Ego amo,	I love,	*Nos amāmus*,	We love,
Tu amas,	thou lovest,	*Vos amātis*,	ye love,
Ille amat,	he loves.	*Illi amant*,	they love.

Note. That all nouns are of the third person, except *ego*, *nos*, *tu*, and *vos*: *Also*, that all nouns of the vocative case, are of the second person; and the relative *qui* is used of all persons.

Of the verb ESSE, to be.

The verb *esse*, to be, is styled an auxiliary or helping verb, because it assists in the formation of other verbs: its conjugation is, for the most part, very irregular.

---

[37] The preterimperfect tense sometimes denotes a practice or habit: "Mactābant," they used to sacrifice; "orābat," he was wont to pray; "*aiēbat*," *he would* say, he used to say.

Sum, es, fui, esse, futūrus, to be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*		2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*was.*	
ing. Sum,	*I am.*	Sing. Eram,	*I was.*
Es,[28]	*thou art.*	Eras,	*thou wast.*
Est,	*he is.*	Erat,	*he was.*
lur. Sumus,	*We are.*	Plur. Erāmus,	*We were.*
Estis,	*ye are.*	Erātis,	*ye were.*
Sunt,	*they are.*	Erant,	*they were.*

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have.*

ng. Fui,	*I have been.*
Fuisti,	*thou hast been.*
Fuit,	*he has been.*
ur. Fuĭmus,	*We have been.*
Fuistis,	*ye have been.*
Fuērunt, *vel* fuēre,	*they have been.*

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had.*

ıg. Fuĕram,	*I had been.*
Fuĕras,	*thou hadst been.*
Fuĕrat,	*he had been.*
ur. Fuerāmus,	*We had been.*
Fuerātis,	*ye had been.*
Fuĕrant,	*they had been.*

5. Future Tense.—*shall*, or *will.*

ıg. Ero,	*I shall*, or, *will be.*
Eris,	*thou shalt*, or, *wilt be.*
Erit,	*he shall*, or, *will be.*
ır. Erĭmus,	*We shall*, or, *will be.*
Erĭtis,	*ye shall*, or, *will be.*
Erunt,	*they shall*, or, *will be.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. *No first Person.*

g. Sis, es, esto,	*Be thou.*
Sit, esto,	*be he*, or, *let him be.*
ır. Simus,	*Be we*, or, *let us be.*
Sitis, este, estōte,	*be ye.*
Sint, sunto,	*be they*, or, *let them be.*

[28] *Prosum*, a compound of *sum*, admits the letter *d* where two vowels ıld otherwise meet; prodes, prodĕram, prodesse.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may*, or, *can*.

Sing.	Sim,	*I may*, or, *can be*.
	Sis,	*thou may'st*, or, *canst be*.
	Sit,	*he may*, or, *can be*.
Plur.	Simus,	*We may*, or, *can be*.
	Sitis,	*ye may*, or, *can be*.
	Sint,	*they may*, or, *can be*.

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might*, or, *could*.

Sing.	Essem, *vel*, forem,	*I might*, or, *could be*.
	Esses, *vel*, fores,	*thou might'st*, or, *could'st be*.
	Esset, *vel*, foret,	*he might*, or, *could be*.
Plur.	Essēmus, *vel*, forēmus,	*We might*, or, *could be*.
	Essētis, *vel*, forētis,	*ye might*, or, *could be*.
	Essent, *vel*, forent,	*they might*, or, *could be*.

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*may have, should have*, &c.

Sing.	Fŭĕrim,	*I may*, or, *should have been*.
	Fŭĕris,	*thou may'st*, or, *should'st have been*.
	Fŭĕrit,	*he may*, or, *should have been*.
Plur.	Fuerĭmus,	*We may*, or, *should have been*.
	Fuerĭtis,	*ye may*, or, *should have been*.
	Fŭĕrint,	*they may*, or, *should have been*.

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*might, would have*, &c.

Sing.	Fuissem,	*I might*, or, *would have been*.
	Fuisses,	*thou might'st*, or, *would'st have been*.
	Fuisset,	*he might*, or, *would have been*.
Plur.	Fuissēmus,	*We might*, or, *would have been*.
	Fuissētis,	*ye might*, or, *would have been*.
	Fuissent,	*they might*, or, *would have been*.

5. Future Tense.—*shall have*.

Sing.	Fŭĕro,	*I shall have been*.
	Fŭĕris,	*thou shalt have been*.
	Fŭĕrit,	*he shall have been*.
Plur.	Fuerĭmus,	*We shall have been*.
	Fuerĭtis,	*ye shall have been*.
	Fŭĕrint,	*they shall have been*.

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, and Preterimperfect Tense,
Esse, *to be*.

Preterperfect, and Preterpluperfect Tense,
Fuisse, *to have been.*
Future Tense,
Fore, *vel,* Futūrum esse, *to be about to be.*
Participle of the future in *rus,*
Futūrus, *about to be.*

CONJUGATION OF VERBS REGULAR.

Conjugation is the inflection of a verb from its root, through the various relations of mood, tense, number, and person.

Verbs regular are such as are formed according to the general rules.

Verbs have four conjugations, both in the active and passive voice, distinguished by the mark or quantity of the vowel before *re* and *ris.*

The first conjugation of verbs active has *a* long, before *re* and *ris:* as, *amāre, amāris.*[39]

The second has *e* long, before *re* and *ris:* as, *monēre, monēris.*

The third has *e* short, before *re* and *ris:* as, *regĕre, regĕris.*

The fourth has *i* long, before *re* and *ris:* as, *audīre, audīris.*

Verbs active in *O* are conjugated after these examples:

1. Am-o, am-as, am-āvi, am-āre; aman-di, aman-do, aman-dum; amāt-um, amāt-u; am-ans, amatū-rus: *to love.*

2. Mon-eo, mon-es, mon-ui, mon-ēre; monen-di, monen-do, monen-dum; monĭt-um, monĭt-u; mon-ens, monitū-rus: *to advise.*

3. Reg-o, reg-is, rex-i, reg-ĕre; regen-di, regen-do, regen-dum; rect-um, rect-u; reg-ens, rectū-rus: *to rule,* or *govern.*

4. Aud-io, aud-is, aud-īvi, aud-īre; audien-di, audien-do, audien-dum; audīt-um, audīt-u; audi-ens, audit-ū-rus: *to hear.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.—*Amo.*[40]

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

Sing.	Amo,	*I love, am loving,* or, *do love.*
	am-as,	*thou lovest, art loving,* or, *dost love.*
	am-at,	*he loves, is loving,* or, *does love.*
Plur.	Am-āmus,	*We love, are loving,* or, *do love.*
	am-ātis,	*ye love, are loving,* or, *do love.*
	am-ant,	*they love, are loving,* or, *do love.*

[39] Except *do,* I give, which, with its compounds, has *ă (dă)* short: *circumdăre, circumdăbam, circumdăbo,* etc.

[40] The root-tense of the verb is the first person singular of the indica-

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

Sing.	Am-ābam,	*I did love*, or, *was loving.*
	Am-ābas,	*thou didst love*, or, *wast loving.*
	Am-ābat,	*he did love*, or, *was loving.*
Plur.	Am-abāmus,	*We did love*, or, *were loving.*
	am-abātis,	*ye did love*, or, *were loving.*
	am-ābant,	*they did love*, or, *were loving.*

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing.	Amāv-i,	*I loved*, or, *have loved.*
	amav-isti,	*thou lovedst*, or, *hast loved.*
	amāv-it,	*he loved*, or, *has loved.*
Plur.	Amav-ĭmus,	*We loved*, or, *have loved.*
	amav-istis,	*ye loved*, or, *have loved.*
	amav-ērunt, *vel*, ēre,	*they loved*, or, *have loved.*

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing.	Amav-ĕram,	*I had loved.*
	amav-ĕras,	*thou hadst loved.*
	amav-ĕrat,	*he had loved.*
Plur.	Amav-erāmus,	*We had loved.*
	amav-erātis,	*ye had loved.*
	amav-ĕrant,	*they had loved.*

5. Future Tense.—*shall*, or, *will.*

Sing.	Am-ābo,	*I shall*, or, *will love.*
	am-ābis,	*thou shalt*, or, *wilt love.*
	am-ābit,	*he shall*, or, *will love.*
Plur.	Am-abĭmus,	*We shall*, or, *will love.*
	am-abĭtis,	*ye shall*, or, *will love.*
	am-ābunt,	*they shall*, or, *will love.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. *No first Person.*

Sing.	Am-a, am-āto,	*Love thou*, or, *do thou love.*
	am-et, am-āto,	*love he*, or, *let him love.*
Plur.	Amēmus,	*Love we*, or, *let us love.*
	am-āte, am-atōte,	*love ye*, or, *do ye love.*
	am-ent, am-anto,	*love they*, or, *let them love.*

---

tive, as *amo, moneo, audio;* and the more important tenses of the acti voice, next to the root-tense, are three:

1. The present infinitive, *amāre, regĕre.*
2. The perfect indicative, *amāvi, rexi.*
3. And the active supine, *amātum, rectum.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should.*

ing.	Am-em,	*I may*, or, *can love.*
	am-es,	*thou may'st*, or, *canst love.*
	am-et,	*he may*, or, *can love.*
lur.	Am-ēmus,	*We may*, or, *can love.*
	am-ētis,	*ye may*, or, *can love.*
	am-ent,	*they may*, or, *can love.*

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should.*

ng.	Am-ārem,	*I might*, or, *could love.*
	am-āres,	*thou might'st*, or, *could'st love.*
	am-āret,	*he might*, or, *could love.*
ur.	Am-arēmus,	*We might*, or, *could love.*
	am-arētis,	*ye might*, or, *could love.*
	am-ārent,	*they might*, or, *could love.*

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*should have, may have.*

ng.	Amav-ĕrim,	*I should have loved.*
	amav-ĕris,	*thou should'st have loved.*
	amav-ĕrit,	*he should have loved.*
ur.	Amav-erĭmus,	*We should have loved.*
	amav-erĭtis,	*ye should have loved.*
	amav-ĕrint,	*they should have loved.*

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could have.*

ng.	Amav-issem,	*I would have loved.*
	amav-isses,	*thou would'st have loved.*
	amav-isset,	*he would have loved.*
ur.	Amav-issēmus,	*We would have loved.*
	amav-issētis,	*ye would have loved.*
	amav-issent,	*they would have loved.*

5. Future Tense.—*shall have.*

ng.	Amav-ĕro,	*I shall have loved.*
	amav-ĕris,	*thou shalt have loved.*
	amav-ĕrit,	*he shall have loved.*
ur.	Amav-erīmus,	*We shall have loved.*
	amav-erītis,	*ye shall have loved.*
	amav-ĕrint,	*they shall have loved.*

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, and Preterimperfect Tense,

Am-āre, *to love.*

Preterperfect, and Preterpluperfect Tense,

Amav-isse, *to have loved.*

Future Tense,

Amatū-rum esse, *to be about to love.*

GERUNDS.

Aman-di,	*of loving.*
Aman-do,	*in loving.*
Aman-dum,	*to love.*

SUPINES.

Active,	Passive,
Amāt-um, *to love.*	Amāt-u, *to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense,	Future in *rus*,
Amans, *loving.*	Amatū-rus, *about to love.*

Formation of the Tenses of the Active Voice.

1. From the *Present tense Indicative*, are formed all other present tenses, all the preterimperfect tenses, with the future indicative and the gerunds: as, amo, amāre, ama, amāto, amem, amans; amābam, amārem; amābo; amandi, amando, amandum.

2. From the *Perfect tense Indicative* are formed all other preterperfect tenses, all the preterpluperfect tenses, with the future tense potential: as, amāvi, amavĕrim; amavĕram, amavissem, amavisse; amavĕro.

3. From the *supine* in *um*, are formed the supine in *u*, and the two future tenses of the infinitive: as, amātum, amātu; amatūrum (esse), amatūrus.

Hence, verbs which want the present or the perfect tense of the indicative, or the supine in *um*, want likewise the tenses formed respectively from each of those parts.

SECOND CONJUGATION.—Moneo.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

Sing.	Mon-eo,	*I advise, am advising*, or, *do advise.*
	mon-es,	*thou advisest, art advising*, or, *dost advise.*
	mon-et,	*he advises, is advising*, or, *does advise.*
Plur.	Mon-ēmus,	*We advise, are advising*, or, *do advise.*
	mon-ētis,	*ye advise, are advising*, or, *do advise.*
	mon-ent,	*they advise, are advising*, or, *do advise.*

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

ing.	Mon-ēbam,	*I did advise*, or, *was advising.*
	mon-ēbas,	*thou didst advise*, or, *wast advising.*
	mon-ēbat,	*he did advise*, or, *was advising.*
lur.	Mon-ebāmus,	*We did advise*, or, *were advising.*
	mon-ebātis,	*ye did advise*, or, *were advising.*
	mon-ēbant,	*they did advise*, or, *were advising.*

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have.*

ng.	Monu-i,	*I advised*, or, *have advised.*
	monu-isti,	*thou advisedst*, or, *hast advised.*
	monu-it,	*he advised*, or, *hath advised.*
ur.	Monu-ĭmus,	*We advised*, or, *have advised.*
	monu-istis,	*ye advised*, or, *have advised.*
	monu-ērunt, *v.* -ēre,	*they advised*, or, *have advised.*

4. Preterpluperfect Tense—*had.*

ng.	Monu-ĕram,	*I had advised.*
	monu-ĕras,	*thou hadst advised.*
	monu-ĕrat,	*he had advised.*
ur.	Monu-erāmus,	*We had advised.*
	monu-erātis,	*ye had advised.*
	monu-ĕrant,	*they had advised.*

5. Future Tense.—*shall*, or *will.*

ng.	Monē-bo,	*I shall*, or, *will advise.*
	monē-bis,	*thou shalt*, or, *wilt advise.*
	monē-bit,	*he shall*, or, *will advise.*
ur.	Mone-bĭmus,	*We shall*, or, *will advise.*
	mone-bĭtis,	*ye shall*, or, *will advise.*
	monē-bunt,	*they shall*, or, *will advise.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. *No first Person.*

g.	Mon-e, mon-ēto,	*Advise thou*, or, *do thou advise.*
	mon-eat, mon-ēto,	*advise he*, or, *let him advise.*
ur.	Mon-eāmus,	*Advise we*, or, *let us advise.*
	mon-ēte, mon-etōte,	*advise ye*, or, *do ye advise.*
	mon-eant, mon-ento,	*advise they*, or, *let them advise.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should.*

Sing.	Mone-am,	*I may*, or, *can advise.*
	mone-as,	*thou may'st*, or, *canst advise.*
	mone-at,	*he may*, or, *can advise.*
Plur.	Mone-āmus,	*We may*, or, *can advise.*
	mone-ātis,	*ye may*, or, *can advise.*
	mone-ant,	*they may*, or, *can advise.*

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should.*

Sing.	Monē-rem,	*I might*, or, *could advise.*
	monē-res,	*thou might'st*, or, *could'st advise.*
	monē-ret,	*he might*, or, *could advise.*
Plur.	Mone-rēmus,	*We might*, or, *could advise.*
	mone-rētis,	*ye might*, or, *could advise.*
	monē-rent,	*they might*, or, *could advise.*

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*should have, may have.*

Sing.	Monu-ĕrim,	*I should have advised.*
	monu-ĕris,	*thou should'st have advised.*
	monu-ĕrit,	*he should have advised.*
Plur.	Monu-erĭmus,	*We should have advised.*
	monu-erĭtis,	*ye should have advised.*
	monu-ĕrint,	*they should have advised.*

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could have.*

Sing.	Monu-issem,	*I would have advised.*
	monu-isses,	*thou would'st have advised.*
	monu-isset,	*he would have advised.*
Plur.	Monu-issēmus,	*We would have advised.*
	monu-issētis,	*ye would have advised.*
	monu-issent,	*they would have advised.*

5. Future Tense.—*shall have.*

Sing.	Monu-ĕro,	*I shall have advised.*
	monu-ĕris,	*thou shalt have advised.*
	monu-ĕrit,	*he shall have advised.*
Plur.	Monu-erĭmus,	*We shall have advised.*
	monu-erĭtis,	*ye shall have advised.*
	monu-ĕrint,	*they shall have advised.*

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, and Preterimperfect Tense,
Mon-ēre, *to advise.*

Preterperfect, and Preterpluperfect Tense,
Monu-isse, *to have advised.*

Future Tense,
Monitū-rum esse, *to be about to advise.*

GERUNDS.

Monen-di,	*of advising.*
monen-do,	*in advising.*
monen-dum,	*to advise.*

SUPINES.

Active,	Passive,
Monĭt-um, *to advise.*	Monĭt-u, *to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense,	Future in *rus*,
Mon-ens, *advising.*	Monitū-rus, *about to advise.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.—Rego.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

Sing.	Reg-o,	*I rule, am ruling*, or, *do rule.*
	reg-is,	*thou rulest, art ruling*, or, *dost rule.*
	reg-it,	*he rules, is ruling*, or, *does rule.*
Plur.	Reg-ĭmus,	*We rule, are ruling*, or, *do rule.*
	reg-ĭtis,	*ye rule, are ruling*, or, *do rule.*
	reg-unt,	*they rule, are ruling*, or, *do rule.*

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

Sing.	Regē-bam,	*I did rule*, or, *was ruling.*
	regē-bas,	*thou didst rule*, or, *wast ruling.*
	regē-bat,	*he did rule*, or, *was ruling.*
Plur.	Regē-bāmus,	*We did rule*, or, *were ruling.*
	regē-bātis,	*ye did rule*, or, *were ruling.*
	regē-bant,	*they did rule*, or, *were ruling.*

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing.	Rex-i,	*I ruled*, or, *have ruled.*
	rex-isti,	*thou ruled'st*, or, *hast ruled.*
	rex-it,	*he ruled*, or, *has ruled.*
Plur.	Rex-ĭmus,	*We ruled*, or, *have ruled.*
	rex-istis,	*ye ruled*, or, *have ruled.*
	rex-ērunt, *v.* -ēre,	*they ruled*, or, *have ruled.*

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing.	Rex-ĕram,	*I had ruled.*
	rex-ĕras,	*thou hadst ruled.*
	rex-ĕrat,	*he had ruled.*
Plur.	Rex-erāmus,	*We had ruled.*
	rex-erātis,	*ye had ruled.*
	rex-ĕrant,	*they had ruled.*

5. Future Tense.—*shall*, or, *will.*

Sing.	Reg-am,	*I shall*, or, *will rule.*
	reg-es,	*thou shalt*, or, *wilt rule.*
	reg-et,	*he shall*, or, *will rule.*
Plur.	Reg-ēmus,	*We shall*, or, *will rule.*
	reg-ētis,	*ye shall*, or, *will rule.*
	reg-ent,	*they shall*, or, *will rule.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. *No first Person.*

Sing.	Reg-e, reg-ĭto,[41]	*Rule thou*, or, *do thou rule.*
	reg-at, reg-ĭto,	*rule he*, or, *let him rule.*
Plur.	Reg-āmus,	*Rule we*, or, *let us rule.*
	reg-ĭte, reg-itōte,	*rule ye*, or, *do ye rule.*
	reg-unt, reg-unto,	*rule they*, or, *let them rule.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should.*

Sing.	Reg-am,	*I may*, or, *can rule.*
	reg-as,	*thou may'st*, or, *canst rule.*
	reg-at,	*he may*, or, *can rule.*
Plur.	Reg-āmus,	*We may*, or, *can rule.*
	reg-ātis,	*ye may*, or, *can rule.*
	reg-ant,	*they may*, or, *can rule.*

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should.*

Sing.	Reg-ĕrem,	*I might*, or, *could rule.*
	reg-ĕres,	*thou might'st*, or, *could'st rule.*
	reg-ĕret,	*he might*, or, *could rule.*
Plur.	Reg-erēmus,	*We might*, or, *could rule.*
	reg-erētis,	*ye might*, or, *could rule.*
	reg-ĕrent,	*they might*, or, *could rule.*

[41] Three verbs of the third conjugation drop the final *e* of this person—*facio*, to do, *dico*, to tell, *duco*, to lead, making *fac, dic, duc*; also their compounds, *calĕfac, addic, adduc.* To which we may add the irregular verb, *fero, fer.*

3. Preterimperfect Tense.—*should have, may have,* &c.

ing.	Rex-ĕrim,	*I should have ruled.*
	rex-ĕris,	*thou should'st have ruled.*
	rex-ĕrit,	*he should have ruled.*
lur.	Rex-erĭmus,	*We should have ruled.*
	rex-erĭtis,	*ye should have ruled.*
	rex-ĕrint,	*they should have ruled.*

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could have.*

ng.	Rex-issem,	*I would have ruled.*
	rex-isses,	*thou would'st have ruled.*
	rex-isset,	*he would have ruled.*
ur.	Rex-issēmus,	*We would have ruled.*
	rex-issētis,	*ye would have ruled.*
	rex-issent,	*they would have ruled.*

5. Future Tense.—*shall have.*

ıg.	Rex-ĕro,	*I shall have ruled.*
	rex-ĕris,	*thou shalt have ruled.*
	rex-ĕrit,	*he shall have ruled.*
ır.	rex-erīmus,	*We shall have ruled.*
	rex-erītis,	*ye shall have ruled.*
	rex-ĕrint,	*they shall have ruled.*

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, and Preterimperfect Tense,
Reg-ĕre, *to rule.*

Preterperfect, and Preterpluperfect Tense,
Rex-isse, *to have ruled.*

Future Tense,
Rectū-rum esse, *to be about to rule.*

GERUNDS.

Regen-di,	*of ruling.*
regen-do,	*in ruling.*
regen-dum,	*to rule.*

SUPINES.

Active,	Passive,
Rect-um, *to rule.*	Rect-u, *to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense,	Future in *rus,*
Reg-ens, *ruling.*	Rectū-rus, *about to rule.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Audio.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

Sing.	Aud-io,	*I hear, am hearing*, or, *do hear.*
	aud-is,	*thou hearest, art hearing*, or, *dost hear.*
	aud-it,	*he hears, is hearing*, or, *does hear.*
Plur.	Aud-īmus,	*We hear, are hearing*, or, *do hear.*
	aud-ītis,	*ye hear, are hearing*, or, *do hear.*
	aud-iunt,	*they hear, are hearing*, or, *do hear.*

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

Sing.	Audiē-bam,	*I did hear*, or, *was hearing.*
	audiē-bas,	*thou didst hear*, or, *wast hearing.*
	audiē-bat,	*he did hear*, or, *was hearing.*
Plur.	Audie-bāmus,	*We did hear*, or, *were hearing.*
	audie-bātis,	*ye did hear*, or, *were hearing.*
	audiē-bant,	*they did hear*, or, *were hearing.*

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing.	Audīv-i,	*I heard*, or, *have heard.*
	audiv-isti,	*thou heard'st*, or, *hast heard.*
	audīv-it,	*he heard*, or, *has heard.*
Plur.	Audiv-ĭmus,	*We heard*, or, *have heard.*
	audiv-istis,	*ye heard*, or, *have heard.*
	audiv-ērunt, *v.* -ēre,	*they heard*, or, *have heard.*

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing.	Audiv-ĕram,	*I had heard.*
	audiv-ĕras,	*thou hadst heard.*
	audiv-ĕrat,	*he had heard.*
Plur.	Audiv-erāmus,	*We had heard.*
	audiv-erātis,	*ye had heard.*
	audiv-ĕrant,	*they had heard.*

5. Future Tense.—*shall*, or, *will.*

Sing.	Audi-am,	*I shall*, or, *will hear.*
	audi-es,	*thou shalt*, or, *wilt hear.*
	audi-et,	*he shall*, or, *will hear.*
Plur.	Audi-ēmus,	*We shall*, or, *will hear.*
	audi-ētis,	*ye shall*, or, *will hear.*
	audi-ent,	*they shall*, or, *will hear.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. *No first Person.*

ng.	Aud-i, aud-īto,	*Hear thou*, or, *do thou hear.*
	aud-iat, aud-īto,	*hear he*, or, *let him hear.*
ur.	Aud-iāmus,	*Hear we*, or, *let us hear.*
	aud-īte, aud-itōte,	*hear ye*, or, *do ye hear.*
	aud-iant, aud-iunto,	*hear they*, or, *let them hear.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should.*

ıg.	Audi-am,	*I may*, or, *can hear.*
	audi-as,	*thou may'st*, or, *canst hear.*
	audi-at,	*he may*, or, *can hear.*
ır.	Audi-āmus,	*We may*, or, *can hear.*
	audi-ātis,	*ye may*, or, *can hear.*
	audi-ant,	*they may*, or, *can hear.*

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should.*

ıg.	Audī-rem,	*I might*, or, *could hear.*
	audī-res,	*thou might'st*, or, *couldst hear.*
	audī-ret,	*he might*, or, *could hear.*
ır.	Audi-rēmus,	*We might*, or, *could hear.*
	audi-rētis,	*ye might*, or, *could hear.*
	audī-rent,	*they might*, or, *could hear.*

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*should have, may have*, &c.

ıg.	Audiv-ĕrim,	*I should have heard.*
	audiv-ĕris,	*thou should'st have heard.*
	audiv-ĕrit,	*he should have heard.*
ır.	Audiv-erĭmus,	*We should have heard.*
	audiv-erĭtis,	*ye should have heard.*
	audiv-ĕrint,	*they should have heard.*

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could have.*

ıg.	Audiv-issem,	*I would have heard.*
	audiv-isses,	*thou wouldst have heard.*
	audiv-isset,	*he would have heard.*
ır.	Audiv-issēmus,	*We would have heard.*
	audiv-issētis,	*ye would have heard.*
	audiv-issent,	*they would have heard.*

5. Future Tense.—*shall have.*

Sing.	Audiv-ĕro,	*I shall have heard.*
	audiv-ĕris,	*thou shalt have heard.*
	audiv-ĕrit,	*he shall have heard.*
Plur.	Audiv-erīmus,	*We shall have heard.*
	audiv-erītis,	*ye shall have heard.*
	audiv-ĕrint,	*they shall have heard.*

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, and Preterimperfect Tense,

Aud-īre, *to hear.*

Preterperfect, and Preterpluperfect Tense,

Audiv-isse, *to have heard.*

Future Tense,

Auditū-rum esse, *to be about to hear.*

GERUNDS.

Audien-di,	*of hearing.*
audien-do,	*in hearing.*
audien-dum,	*to hear.*

SUPINES.

Active,	Passive,
Audīt-um, *to hear.*	Audīt-u, *to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense,	Future in *rus*,
Aud-iens, *hearing.*	Auditū-rus, *about to hear.*

CONJUGATION OF VERBS PASSIVE.

Verbs passive in OR, are thus conjugated:

1. Am-or, am-āris *vel* am-āre, amāt-us sum *vel* fui; am-āri; amāt-us, aman-dus: *to be loved.*

2. Mon-eor, mon-ēris *vel* mon-ēre, monĭt-us sum *vel* fui; mon-ēri; monĭt-us, monen-dus: *to be advised.*

3. Reg-or, reg-ĕris *vel* reg-ĕre, rect-us sum *vel* fui; reg-i; rec-tus, regen-dus: *to be ruled.*

4. Aud-ior, aud-īris *vel* aud-īre, audīt-us sum *vel* fui; aud-īri; audīt-us, audien-dus: *to be heard.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.—Amor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

ing. Amor,[42]	*I am loved.*
am-āris, *v.* am-āre,	*thou art loved.*
am-ātur,	*he is loved.*
lur. Am-āmur,	*We are loved.*
am-amĭni,	*ye are loved.*
am-antur,	*they are loved.*

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*was.*

ıg. Am-ābar,	*I was loved.*
am-abāris, *v.* -abāre,	*thou wast loved.*
am-abātur,	*he was loved.*
ur. Am-abāmur,	*We were loved.*
am-abamĭni,	*ye were loved.*
am-abantur,	*they were loved.*

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have been.*

ıg. Amāt-us sum, *vel* fui,[43]	*I have been loved.*
amāt-us es, *v.* fuisti,	*thou hast been loved.*
amāt-us est, *v.* fuit,	*he has been loved.*
ır. Amāt-i sumus, *v.* fuĭmus,	*We have been loved.*
amāt-i estis, *v.* fuistis,	*ye have been loved.*
amāt-i sunt, fuērunt, *v.* -ēre,	*they have been loved.*

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

g. Amāt-us eram, *v.* fuĕram,	*I had been loved.*
amāt-us eras, *v.* fuĕras,	*thou hadst been loved.*
amāt-us erat, *v.* fuĕrat,	*he had been loved.*
ır. Amāt-i erāmus, *v.* fuerāmus,	*We had been loved.*
amāt-i erātis, *v.* fuerātis,	*ye had been loved.*
amāt-i erant, *v.* fuĕrant,	*they had been loved.*

---

[42] From *dari*, *fari*, the first persons of the present indicative and potential are not found, dor, der, for, fer; they are, therefore, seldom or never used in modern Latinity.

[43] The compound tenses of the passive voice, called "the periphrastic conjugation," are composed of the past participle, and the auxiliary verbs; and though only one gender is expressed for the former word, yet, as all other participles in *us*, it has the triple termination of *bonus*; as *amātus, amāta, amātum; monĭtus, monĭta, monĭtum.*

5. Future Tense.—*shall*, or, *will be.*

Sing.	Am-ābor,	*I shall*, or, *will be loved.*
	am-abĕris, *v.* -abĕre,	*thou shalt*, or, *wilt be loved.*
	am-abĭtur,	*he shall*, or, *will be loved.*
Plur.	Am-abĭmur,	*We shall*, or, *will be loved.*
	am-abimĭni,	*ye shall*, or, *will be loved.*
	am-abuntur,	*they shall*, or, *will be loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.—*No first Person.*

Sing.	Am-āre, amātor,	*Be thou loved.*
	am-ētur, am-ātor,	*let him be loved.*
Plur.	Am-ēmur,	*Let us be loved.*
	am-amĭni, am-amĭnor,	*be ye loved.*
	am-entur, am-antor,	*let them be loved.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should be.*

Sing.	Am-er,[42]	*I may*, or, *can be loved.*
	amēris, *v.* am-ēre,	*thou may'st*, or, *canst be loved.*
	am-ētur,	*he may*, or, *can be loved.*
Plur.	Am-ēmur,	*We may*, or, *can be loved.*
	am-emĭni,	*ye may*, or, *can be loved.*
	am-entur,	*they may*, or, *can be loved.*

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should be.*

Sing.	Am-ārer,	*I might*, or, *could be loved.*
	am-arēris, *v.* -arēre,	*thou might'st*, or, *could'st be loved.*
	am-arētur,	*he might*, or, *could be loved.*
Plur.	Am-arēmur,	*We might*, or, *could be loved.*
	am-aremĭni,	*ye might*, or, *could be loved.*
	am-arentur,	*they might*, or, *could be loved.*

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*may, should have been.*

Sing.	Amāt-us sim, *v.* fuĕrim,	*I should have been loved.*
	amāt-us sis, *v.* fuĕris,	*thou should'st have been loved.*
	amāt-us sit, *v.* fuĕrit,	*he should have been loved.*
Plur.	Amāt-i simus, *v.* fuerĭmus,	*We should have been loved.*
	amāt-i sitis, *v.* fuerĭtis,	*ye should have been loved.*
	amāt-i sint, *v.* fuĕrint,	*they should have been loved.*

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would have been.*

Sing.	Amāt-us essem, *v.* fuissem,	*I would have been loved.*
	amāt-us esses, *v.* fuisses,	*thou would'st have been loved.*
	amāt-us esset, *v.* fuisset,	*he would have been loved.*
Plur.	Amāt-i essēmus, *v.* fuissēmus,	*We would have been loved.*
	amāt-i essētis, *v.* fuissētis,	*ye would have been loved.*
	amāt-i essent, *v.* fuissent,	*they would have been loved.*

5. Future Tense.—*shall have been.*

Sing.	Amāt-us ero, *v.* fuĕro,	*I shall have been loved.*
	amāt-us eris, *v.* fuĕris,	*thou shalt have been loved.*
	amāt-us erit, *v.* fuĕrit,	*he shall have been loved.*
Plur.	Amāt-i erĭmus, *v.* fuerīmus,	*We shall have been loved.*
	amāt-i erĭtis, *v.* fuerītis,	*ye shall have been loved.*
	amāt-i erunt, *v.* fuĕrint,	*they shall have been loved.*

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, and Preterimperfect Tense,

Am-āri, *to be loved.*

Preterperfect, and Preterpluperfect Tense,

Amāt-um esse, *vel* fuisse. *to have been loved.*

Future Tense,

Amāt-um iri, *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

The Preterperfect Tense,

Amāt-us, *loved*, or, *being loved.*

The Future in *dus*,

Aman-dus, *to be loved.*

Formation of the Tenses of the Passive Voice.

The tenses of the passive voice may be divided into simple and compound; the simple tenses consisting of one word each, and the compound tenses of two words each.

1. The *simple tenses* are formed from the like tenses of the active voice, either by a slight addition, as, amo*r*, from amo; or by a slight change, as amā*bar*, from amā*bam*.

2. The *compound tenses* are composed of the past partici-

ple and various tenses of the verb *esse;* as, amātus sum *vel* fui, amātus eram *vel* fŭĕram.

3. The past participle is formed by adding the letter *s* to the supine in *u;* as, amātu, amātus.

4. The future in *dus* is formed from the participle in *ans* or *ens*, by changing *s* into *dus;* as, amans, amandus.

SECOND CONJUGATION.—Moneor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing.	Mon-eor,	*I am advised.*
	mon-ēris, *v.* -ēre,	*thou art advised.*
	mon-ētur,	*he is advised.*
Plur.	Mon-ēmur,	*We are advised.*
	mon-emĭni,	*ye are advised.*
	mon-entur,	*they are advised.*

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*was.*

Sing.	Mon-ēbar,	*I was advised.*
	mon-ebāris, *v.* -ebāre,	*thou wast advised.*
	mon-ebātur,	*he was advised.*
Plur.	Mon-ebāmur,	*We were advised.*
	mon-ebamĭni,	*ye were advised.*
	mon-ebantur,	*they were advised.*

3. Preterimperfect Tense.—*have been.*

Sing.	Monĭt-us sum, *v.* fui,	*I have been advised.*
	monĭt-us es, *v.* fuisti,	*thou hast been advised.*
	monĭt-us est, *v.* fuit,	*he has been advised.*
Plur.	Monĭt-i sumus, *v.* fuĭmus,	*We have been advised.*
	monĭt-i estis, *v.* fuistis,	*ye have been advised.*
	monĭt-i sunt, fuērunt, *v.* fuēre,	*they have been advised.*

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing.	Monĭt-us eram, *v.* fŭĕram,	*I had been advised.*
	monĭt-us eras, *v.* fŭĕras,	*thou hadst been advised.*
	monĭt-us erat, *v.* fŭĕrat,	*he had been advised.*
Plur.	Monĭt-i erāmus, *v.* fuerāmus,	*We had been advised.*
	monĭt-i erātis, *v.* fuerātis,	*ye had been advised.*
	monĭt-i erant, *v.* fŭĕrant,	*they had been advised.*

5. Future Tense.—*shall*, or, *will be*.

ng. Mon-ēbor,	*I shall*, or, *will be advised.*
mon-ēbĕris, *v.* -ebĕre,	*thou shalt*, or, *wilt be advised.*
mon-ebĭtur,	*he shall*, or, *will be advised.*
ur. Mon-ebĭmur,	*We shall*, or, *will be advised.*
mon-ebimĭni,	*ye shall*, or, *will be advised.*
mon-ebuntur,	*they shall*, or, *will be advised.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

ng. Mon-ēre, mon-ētor,	*Be thou advised.*
mon-ētur, mon-ētor,	*let him be advised.*
ur. Mon-ēmur,	*Let us be advised.*
mon-emĭni, mon-emĭnor,	*be ye advised.*
mon-eantur, mon-entor,	*let them be advised.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may*, *can*, *would*, *should be*.

ng. Mon-ear,	*I may*, or, *can be advised.*
mon-ēāris, *v.* mon-ēāre,	*thou may'st*, or, *canst be advised.*
mon-ētur,	*he may*, or, *can be advised.*
ur. Mon-ēāmur,	*We may*, or, *can be advised.*
mon-eamĭni,	*ye may*, or, *can be advised.*
mon-eantur,	*they may*, or, *can be advised.*

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might*, *could*, *should be*.

ng. Mon-ērer,	*I might*, or, *could be advised.*
mon-erēris, *v.* -erēre,	*thou might'st*, or, *could'st be advised.*
mon-erētur,	*he might*, or, *could be advised.*
ur. Mon-erēmur,	*We might*, or, *could be advised.*
mon-eremĭni,	*ye might*, or, *could be advised.*
mon-erentur,	*they might*, or, *could be advised.*

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*may*, *should have been*.

ng. Monĭt-us sim, *v.* fuĕrim,	*I should have been advised.*
monĭt-us sis, *v.* fuĕris,	*thou should'st have been advised.*
monĭt-us sit, *v.* fuĕrit,	*he should have been advised.*
ur. Monĭt-i simus, *v.* fuerĭmus,	*We should have been advised.*
monĭt-i sitis, *v.* fuerĭtis,	*ye should have been advised.*
monĭt-i sint, *v.* fuĕrint,	*they should have been advised.*

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would have been.*

Sing.	Monĭt-us essem, *v.* fuissem,	*I would have been advised.*
	monĭt-us esses, *v.* fuisses,	*thou wouldst have been advised.*
	monĭt-us esset, *v.* fuisset,	*he would have been advised.*
Plur.	Monĭt-i essēmus, *v.* fuissēmus,	*We would have been advised.*
	monĭt-i essētis, *v.* fuissētis,	*ye would have been advised.*
	monĭt-i essent, *v.* fuissent,	*they would have been advised.*

5. Future Tense.—*shall have been.*

Sing.	Monĭt-us ero, *v.* fuĕro,	*I shall have been advised.*
	monĭt-us eris, *v.* fuĕris,	*thou shalt have been advised.*
	monĭt-us erit, *v.* fuĕrit,	*he shall have been advised.*
Plur.	Monĭt-i erĭmus, *v.* fuerīmus,	*We shall have been advised.*
	monĭt-i erĭtis, *v.* fuerītis,	*ye shall have been advised.*
	monĭt-i erunt, *v.* fuĕrint,	*they shall have been advised.*

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, and Preterimperfect Tense,

Mon-ēri, *to be advised.*

Preterperfect, and Preterpluperfect Tense,

Monĭt-um esse, *vel* fuisse, *to have been advised.*

Future Tense.

Monĭt-um iri, *to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

The Preterperfect Tense,

Monĭt-us, *advised*, or, *being advised.*

The Future in *dus.*

Monen-dus, *to be advised.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.—Regor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing.	Reg-or,	*I am ruled.*
	reg-ĕris, *v.* reg-ĕre,	*thou art ruled.*
	reg-ĭtur,	*he is ruled.*
Plur.	Reg-ĭmur,	*We are ruled.*
	reg-imĭni,	*ye are ruled.*
	reg-untur,	*they are ruled.*

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*was.*

ing. Reg-ēbar,	*I was ruled.*
reg-ēbāris, *v.* -ēbāre,	*thou wast ruled.*
reg-ēbātur,	*he was ruled.*
lur. Reg-ēbāmur,	*We were ruled.*
reg-ēbamĭni,	*ye were ruled.*
reg-ēbantur,	*they were ruled.*

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have been.*

ng. Rect-us sum, *v.* fui,	*I have been ruled.*
rect-us es, *v.* fuisti,	*thou hast been ruled.*
rect-us est, *v.* fuit,	*he has been ruled.*
ur. Rect-i sumus, *v.* fuĭmus,	*We have been ruled.*
rect-i estis, *v.* fuistis,	*ye have been ruled.*
rect-i sunt, fuērunt, *v.* fuēre,	*they have been ruled.*

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

ıg. Rect-us eram, *v.* fuĕram,	*I had been ruled.*
rect-us eras, *v.* fuĕras,	*thou hadst been ruled.*
rect-us erat, *v.* fuĕrat,	*he had been ruled.*
ur. Rect-i erāmus, *v.* fuerāmus,	*We had been ruled,*
rect-i erātis, *v.* fuerātis,	*ye had been ruled.*
rect-i erant, *v.* fuĕrant,	*they had been ruled.*

5. Future Tense.—*shall,* or, *will be.*

ıg. Reg-ar,	*I shall,* or, *will be ruled.*
reg-ēris, *v.* reg-ēre,	*thou shalt,* or, *wilt be ruled.*
reg-ētur,	*he shall,* or, *will be ruled.*
ur. Reg-ēmur,	*We shall,* or, *will be ruled.*
reg-emĭni,	*ye shall,* or, *will be ruled.*
reg-entur,	*they shall,* or, *will be ruled.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

ıg. Reg-ĕre, reg-ĭtor,	*Be thou ruled.*
reg-ātur, reg-ĭtor,	*let him be ruled.*
ır. Reg-āmur,	*Let us be ruled.*
reg-imĭni, reg-iminor,	*be ye ruled.*
reg-antur, reg-untor,	*let them be ruled.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should be.*

Sing.	Reg-ar,	*I may*, or, *can be ruled.*
	reg-āris, *v.* reg-āre,	*thou may'st*, or, *canst be ruled.*
	reg-ātur,	*he may*, or, *can be ruled.*
Plur.	Reg-āmur,	*We may*, or, *can be ruled.*
	reg-amĭni,	*ye may*, or, *can be ruled.*
	reg-antur,	*they may*, or, *can be ruled.*

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should be.*

Sing.	Reg-ĕrer,	*I might*, or, *could be ruled.*
	reg-erēris, *v.* reg-erēre,	*thou might'st*, or, *could'st be ruled.*
	reg-erētur,	*he might*, or, *could be ruled.*
Plur.	Reg-erēmur,	*We might*, or, *could be ruled.*
	reg-eremĭni,	*ye might*, or, *could be ruled.*
	reg-erentur,	*they might*, or, *could be ruled.*

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*may, should have been.*

Sing.	Rect-us sim, *v.* fuĕrim,	*I should have been ruled.*
	rect-us sis, *v.* fuĕris,	*thou should'st have been ruled.*
	rect-us sit, *v.* fuĕrit,	*he should have been ruled.*
Plur.	Rect-i simus, *v.* fuerīmus,	*We should have been ruled.*
	rect-i sitis, *v.* fuerĭtis,	*ye should have been ruled.*
	rect-i sint, *v.* fuĕrint,	*they should have been ruled.*

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would have been.*

Sing.	Rect-us essem, *v.* fuissem,	*I would have been ruled.*
	rect-us esses, *v.* fuisses,	*thou would'st have been ruled.*
	rect-us esset, *v.* fuisset,	*he would have been ruled.*
Plur.	Rect-i essēmus, *v.* fuissēmus,	*We would have been ruled.*
	rect-i essētis, *v.* fuissētis,	*ye would have been ruled.*
	rect-i essent, *v.* fuissent,	*they would have been ruled.*

5. Future Tense.—*shall have been.*

Sing.	Rect-us ero, *v.* fuĕro,	*I shall have been ruled.*
	rect-us eris, *v.* fuĕris,	*thou shalt have been ruled.*
	rect-us erit, *v.* fuerit,	*he shall have been ruled.*
Plur.	Rect-i erĭmus, *v.* fuerīmus,	*We shall have been ruled.*
	rect-i erĭtis, *v.* fuerītis,	*ye shall have been ruled.*
	rect-i erunt, *v.* fuĕrint,	*they shall have been ruled.*

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, and Preterimperfect Tense.

Reg-i, *to be ruled.*

Preterperfect, and Preterpluperfect Tense,

Rect-um esse, *vel*, fuisse, *to have been ruled.*

Future Tense,

Rect-um iri, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

The Preterperfect Tense,

Rect-us, *ruled*, or, *being ruled.*

The Future in *dus*,

Regen-dus, *to be ruled.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Audior.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Aud-ior,	*I am heard.*
aud-īris, *v.* aud-īre,	*thou art heard.*
aud-ītur,	*he is heard.*
Aud-īmur,	*We are heard.*
aud-imĭni,	*ye are heard.*
aud-iuntur,	*they are heard.*

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*was.*

Aud-iēbar,	*I was heard.*
aud-iebāris, *v.* aud-iebāre,	*thou wast heard.*
aud-iebātur,	*he was heard.*
Aud-iebāmur,	*We were heard.*
aud-iebamĭni,	*ye were heard.*
aud-iebantur,	*they were heard.*

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have been.*

Audīt-us sum, *v.* fui,	*I have been heard.*
audīt-us es, *v.* fuisti,	*thou hast been heard.*
audīt-us est, *v.* fuit,	*he has been heard.*
Audīt-i sumus, *v.* fuĭmus,	*We have been heard.*
audīt-i estis, *v.* fuistis,	*ye have been heard.*
audīt-i sunt, fuērunt, *v.* fuēre,	*they have been heard.*

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing.	Audīt-us eram, *v.* fuĕram,	*I had been heard.*
	audīt-us eras, *v.* fuĕras,	*thou hadst been heard.*
	audīt-us erat, *v.* fuĕrat,	*he had been heard.*
Plur.	Audīt-i erāmus, *v.* fuerāmus,	*We had been heard.*
	audīt-i erātis, *v.* fuerātis,	*ye had been heard.*
	audīt-i erant, *v.* fuĕrant,	*they had been heard.*

5. Future Tense.—*shall*, or, *will be.*

Sing.	Aud-iar,	*I shall*, or, *will be heard.*
	aud-iēris, *v.* aud-iēre,	*thou shalt*, or, *wilt be heard.*
	aud-iētur,	*he shall*, or, *will be heard.*
Plur.	Aud-iēmur,	*We shall*, or, *will be heard.*
	aud-iēmĭni,	*ye shall*, or, *will be heard.*
	aud-ientur,	*they shall*, or, *will be heard.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Aud-īre, aud-ītor,	*Be thou heard.*
	aud-iātur, aud-ītor,	*let him be heard.*
Plur.	Aud-iāmur,	*Let us be heard.*
	aud-imĭni, aud-imĭnor,	*be ye heard.*
	aud-iantur, aud-iuntor,	*let them be heard.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should be.*

Sing.	Aud-iar,	*I may*, or, *can be heard.*
	aud-iāris, *v.* aud-iāre,	*thou may'st*, or, *canst be heard.*
	aud-iātur,	*he may*, or, *can be heard.*
Plur.	Aud-iāmur,	*We may*, or, *can be heard.*
	aud-iamĭni,	*ye may*, or, *can be heard.*
	aud-iantur,	*they may*, or, *can be heard.*

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should be.*

Sing.	Aud-īrer,	*I might*, or, *could be heard.*
	aud-irēris, *v.* aud-irēre,	*thou might'st*, or, *could'st be heard.*
	aud-irētur,	*he might*, or, *could be heard.*
Plur.	Aud-irēmur,	*We might*, or, *could be heard.*
	aud-iremĭni,	*ye might*, or, *could be heard.*
	aud-irentur,	*they might*, or, *could be heard.*

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*may, should have been.*

Sing. Audīt-us sim, *v.* fuĕrim, *I should have been heard.*
audīt-us sis, *v.* fuĕris, *thou should'st have been heard.*
audīt-us sit, *v.* fuerĭt, *he should have been heard.*
Plur. Audīt-i simus, *v.* fuerīmus, *We should have been heard.*
audīt-i sitis, *v.* fuerĭtis, *ye should have been heard.*
audīt-i sint, *v.* fuĕrint, *they should have been heard.*

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could have been.*

Sing. Audīt-us essem, *v.* fuissem, *I would have been heard.*
audīt-us esses, *v.* fuisses, *thou would'st have been heard.*
audīt-us esset, *v.* fuisset, *he would have been heard.*
Plur. Audīt-i essēmus, *v.* fuissēmus, *We would have been heard.*
audīt-i essētis, *v.* fuissētis, *ye would have been heard.*
audīt-i essent, *v.* fuissent, *they would have been heard.*

5. Future Tense.—*shall have been.*

Sing. Audīt-us ero, *v.* fuero, *I shall have been heard.*
audīt-us eris, *v.* fuĕris, *thou shalt have been heard.*
audīt-us erit, *v.* fuĕrit, *he shall have been heard.*
Plur. Audīt-i erĭmus, *v.* fuerīmus, *We shall have been heard.*
audīt-i erĭtis, *v.* fuerītis, *ye shall have been heard.*
audīt-i erunt, *v.* fuĕrint, *they shall have been heard.*

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, and Preterimperfect Tense,
Aud-īri, *to be heard.*

Preterperfect, and Preterpluperfect Tense,
Audīt-um esse, *vel* fuisse, *to have been heard.*

Future Tense,
Audīt-um iri, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLE of the Preterperfect Tense,
Audīt-us, *heard,* or, *being heard.*

Participle of the Future in *dus,*
Audien-dus, *to be heard.*

CONJUGATION OF VERBS DEPONENT.

A verb is called deponent, because it *lays aside* its passive signification, and takes an active, either transitive or intransitive.

The form or voice of a deponent verb is passive, with the gerunds, the supines, and commonly the participles, of the active voice.

1. Precor, precāris *vel* precāre, precātus sum *vel* fui, precāri; precandi, precando, precandum; precātum, precātu; precans, precatūrus, precātus, precandus: *to pray.*

2. Mereor, merēris *vel* merēre; meritus sum *vel* fui, merēri; merendi, merendo, merendum; meritum, meritu; merens, meritūrus, meritus, merendus: *to deserve.*

3. Sequor, sequĕris *vel* sequĕre, secūtus sum *vel* fui, sequi; sequendi, sequendo, sequendum; secūtum, secūtu; sequens, secutūrus, secūtus, sequendus: *to follow.*

4. Partior, partīris *vel* partīre, partītus sum *vel* fui, partīri; partiendi, partiendo, partiendum; partītum, partītu; partiens, partitūrus, partītus, partiendus: *to divide.*

CONJUGATION OF VERBS IRREGULAR.

Certain verbs vary from the general rules, and are formed in the manner following:

1. Possum, potes, potui, posse, potens: *to be able.*

2. Volo, vis, volui, velle; volendi, volendo, volendum; volens: *to be willing.*

3. Nolo, nonvis, nolui, nolle; nolendi, nolendo, nolendum; nolens: *to be unwilling.*

4. Malo, mavis, malui, malle; malendi, malendo, malendum; malens: *to be more willing*, or, *to have rather.*

5. Edo, edis *vel* es, edi, edĕre *vel* esse; edendi, edendo, edendum; esum, esu; edens, esūrus: *to eat.*

6. Fero, fers, tuli, ferre; ferendi, ferendo, ferendum; latum, latu; ferens, latūrus: *to bear*, or, *suffer.*

7. Fio, fis, factus sum *vel* fui, fiĕri; factus, faciendus:[44] *to be made*, or, *done.*

8. Feror, ferris *vel* ferre, latus sum *vel* fui, ferri; latus, ferendus: *to be borne*, or *suffered.*

[44] *Fio* is considered a passive form for *facio*, I make, or do.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I am able*, &c.

Singular.			*Plural.*		
um,	potes,	potest,	Possŭmus,	potestis,	possunt.
',	vis,	vult,	volŭmus,	vultis,	volunt.
',	nonvis,	nonvult,	nolŭmus,	nonvultis,	nolunt.
',	mavis,	mavult,	malŭmus,	mavultis,	malunt.
'	edis, *v.* es,	edit, *v.* est,	edĭmus,	edĭtis, *v.* estis,	edunt.
',	fers,	fert,	ferĭmus,	fertis,	ferunt.
	fis,	fit,	fimus,	fitis,	fiunt.
r,	ferris, *v.* ferre,	fertur,	ferĭmur,	ferimĭni,	feruntur.

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*I was able*, &c.

Singular.			*Plural.*		
ĕram,	ĕras,	erat,	erāmus,	erātis,	erant.
-bam, -bam, -bam, -bam, -bam, ham,	bas,	bat,	bāmus,	bātis,	bant.
-bar,	bāris, *v.* bāre;	bātur,	bāmur,	bamĭni,	bantur.

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*I have been able*, &c.

Singular.			*Plural.*		
-i, -i, -i, -i, ', -i,	isti,	it,	ĭmus,	istis,	ērunt, *vel*, ēre.
-us,	sum, es, *v.* *v.*	est, *v.*	i sumus, *v.*	estis, *v.*	sunt, fuērunt, *v.*
-us,	fui; fuisti;	fuit;	fuĭmus;	fuistis;	fuēre.

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*I had been able*, &c.

Singular.			*Plural.*		
-ĕram, -ĕram, -ĕram, -ĕram, ĕram, -ĕram,	ĕras,	ĕrat,	erāmus,	erātis,	erant.
-us,	eram, eras, *v.* *v.*	erat, *v.*	i erāmus, *v.*	erātis, *v.*	erant, *v.*
-us,	fuĕram; -ĕras;	-ĕrat;	fuerāmus;	fuerātis;	fuĕrant.

5. Future Tense.—*I shall, or, will be able*, &c.

Singular.			*Plural.*		
Pot-ĕro,	ĕris,	ĕrit,	erĭmus,	erĭtis,	ĕrunt.
Vol-am, Nol-am, Mal-am, Ed-am, Fer-am, Fi-am,	es,	et,	ēmus,	ētis,	ent.
Fer-ar,	ēris, *v.* ēre;	ētur,	ēmur,	emĭni,	entur.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Obs. *Possum*, *volo*, and *malo*, have no Imperative Mood.

Present Tense.—*be thou unwilling*, &c.

Singular.	*Plural.*
Noli, nolīto. ———	——— nolīte, nolitōte.
Ede, edīto, *vel*, Es, esto; Edat, edīto, *vel*, esto.	edāmus; edīte, editōte, *vel*, este, estōte; ed-ant, -unto.
Fer, ferto; ferat, ferto.	ferāmus; ferte, fertōte; fer-ant, -unto.
Fi, fito; fiat, fito.	fiāmus; fite, fitōte; fiant, fiunto.
Fer-re, -tor; ferātur, fertor.	ferāmur; ferimĭn-i, -or; -antur, -untor.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I may be able*, &c.

Singular.			*Plural.*		
Pose-im, Vel-im, Nol-im, Mal-im,	is,	it,	īmus,	ītis,	int.
Ed-am, Fer-am, Fi-am,	as,	at,	āmus,	ātis,	ant.
Fer-ar, -āris, *v.* -āre;	ātur.		āmur,	amĭni,	antur.

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*I might be able*, &c.

Singular.			*Plural.*		
Esse-em, Vell-em, Noll-em, Edĕr-em, *vel*, Ess-em, Ferr-em, Fiĕr-em,	es,	et,	ēmus,	ētis,	ent.
Ferr-er,	-ēris, *v.* ēre;	ētur.	ēmur,	emĭni,	entur.

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*I should have been able*, &c.

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
Potu-ĕrim, Volu-ĕrim, Nolu-ĕrim, Malu-ĕrim, Ed-ĕrim, Tul-ĕrim,	ĕris,	ĕrit,		erĭmus,	erĭtis,	ĕrint.
Fact-us,	sim,	sis,	sit,	i simus,	sitis,	sint,
	v.	*v.*	*v.*	*v.*	*v.*	*v.*
Lat-us,	fuĕ-rim,	ris,	rit,	fuerĭmus,	fuerĭtis,	fuĕrint.

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.— *I might have been able*, &c.

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
Potu-issem, Volu-issem, Nolu-issem, Malu-issem, Ed-issem, Tul-issem,	isses,	isset,		issēmus,	issētis,	issent.
Fact-us,	essem,	esses,	esset,	i essēmus,	essētis,	essent,
	v.	*v.*	*v.*	*v.*	*v.*	*v.*
Lat-us,	fu-issem,	isses,	isset,	fuissēmus,	fuissētis,	fuissent.

5. Future Tense.—*I shall have been able*, &c.

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
Potu-ĕro, Volu-ĕro, Nolu-ĕro, Malu-ĕro, Ed-ĕro, Tul-ĕro,	ĕris,	ĕrit,		erīmus,	erītis,	ĕrint.
Fact-us,	ero,	eris,	erit,	i erĭmus,	erĭtis,	erunt,
	v.	*v.*	*v.*	*v.*	*v.*	*v.*
Lat-us,	fuĕ-ro,	ris,	rit,	fuerīmus,	fuerītis,	fuĕrint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, and Preterimperfect Tense.—*to be able*, &c.

1. Posse.
2. Velle.
3. Nolle.
4. Malle.
5. Edĕre, *vel*, esse.
6. Ferre.
7. Fĭĕri.
8. Ferri.

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.—*to have been able*, &c.

1. Potuisse.
2. Voluisse.
3. Noluisse.
4. Maluisse.
5. Edisse.
6. Tulisse.
7. Factum esse, *vel*, fuisse.
8. Latum esse, *vel*, fuisse.

Future Tense.—*to be about to eat*, &c.

5. Esūrum esse.
6. Latūrum esse.
7. Factum iri.
8. Latum iri.

Obs. *Possum*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, have no Future Tense of the Infinitive Mood.

EO, *to go*, is also a verb irregular.

Eo, is, ivi, ire, itum, iens, itūrus.

Indic. M. Pres. T.	*Sing.* Eo, is, it.	*Pl.* Imus, itis, eunt.
Preterim. Tense.	*Sing.* Ibam, ibas, ibat.	*Pl.* -āmus, -ātis, -ant.
Future Tense.	*Sing.* Ibo, ibis, ibit.	*Pl.* -ĭmus, -ĭtis, -unt.
Imper. M.	*Sing.* I, ito; eat, ito.	*Pl.* Eāmus; ite, itōte; eant, eunto.
Potent. M.	*Sing.* Eam, eas, eat.	*Pl.* Eāmus, eātis, eant.

Gerunds; Eundi, eundo, eundum.

Participle Pres. T. Iens, *gen.* eūntis.

In all other moods and tenses, *eo* is declined like *audio*.[45]

Obs. In like manner are the compounds of *eo* declined; also *queo*, to be able, and *nequeo*, to be unable; except that these two last have no imperative moods, nor gerunds.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *defective*, that have only some particular tenses and persons; as,

Aio, *I say.*

Ind. M. Pres. T. S. Aio, ais, ait.[46] *Pl.* — — Aiunt.
Preterimp. T. Sing. Aiē-bam, -bas, -bat. *Pl.* bāmus, -bātis, -bant.

[45] "*Ambio* is declined like *audio*." Ruddiman. "*Veneo*, to be sold, (from *venum*, a sale, and *eo*,) has neither gerunds, supines, nor participles."—Scheller.

[46] *Ait* and *inquit* correspond to our English expressions, "he says," and "quoth he."

Preterp. Tense. Sing. — Aisti. — *Pl.* — Aistis. —
Imperative M. Sing. — Ai. —
Potent. M. Pres. T. Sing.—Aias, aiat. *Pl.* Aiāmus,—
Particip. Pres. Tense. Aiens. [aiant.

Ausim, *I dare.*
Indic. or *Potent. M. Sing.* Ausim, ausis, ausit,
Pl. — — Ausint.

Ave, *Hail!*
Imper. M. Sing.—Ave, avēto.—*Pl.*—Avēte, avetōte.—
Infinitive Mood. Avēre.

Salve, *God save you!*
Indicat. M. Future T. Sing. — Salvēbis. —
Imper. M. S.—Salve, salvēto.—*Pl.* Salvēte, salvetōte.
Infinitive M. Salvēre.

Cedo, *Give me.*
Imper. M. Sing. — Cedo. — *Pl.* — Cedīte. —

Faxo, *or*, Faxim, *I will*, or, *may do it; pro* faciam, &c.
Indic. Fut. or, *Poten. M. Sing.* Faxo, *vel*, faxim, faxis, faxit. *Pl.* Faxĭmus, faxĭtis, faxint.

Quæso, *I pray.*
Indic. M. Pres. T. S. Quæ-so, -sis, -sit. *Pl.* Quæsŭmus.
Infin. M. Quæsĕre. *Participle*, Quæsens.

Inquio, *or*, Inquam, *I say.*
Ind. M. Pres. T. S. Inquio, *vel*, in-quam, -quis, -quit.[46]
Pl. Inquĭmus, — inquiunt.
Preterimp. T. S. ——Inquiēbat. *Pl.*——Inquiēbant.
Preterp. T. S. —Inquisti. —
Future T. Sing. —Inquies, inquiet.
Imper. Mood. Sing.—Inque, inquiat, *vel*, inquĭto.
Participle, Inquiens.

Memĭni, *I remember.*
Imperat. M. Sing. — Memento. — *Pl.* — Mementōte. —

Cœpi, *I begin.*
Indic. M. Preterp. T. Sing. Cœpi, cœpisti. —

Odi, *I hate.*
Indic. M. Preterp. T. Sing. Odi, odisti, odit.
Pl. — — Odērunt.

Novi, *know;* and memĭni, *remember:* these two verbs have the tenses only that are formed from the preterperfect tense of the indicative mood: as, of

Memĭn-i are formed *memin-ĕram, -ĕrim, -issem, -ĕro, -isse.*
In like manner do *cœpi* and *odi* also form these tenses.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Verbs which expressed in general, and in English take the word *It* before them, are called *Impersonals*: as,

It delights, *delectat, delectābat, delectāvit*, &c.
It becomes, *decet, decēbat, decuit*, &c.
It is fought, *pugnātur, pugnabātur, pugnātum est*, &c.
It seems, *videtur, videbātur, visum est*, &c.

Note. All intransitive verbs in *o* become impersonal, in the passive voice.

OF A PARTICIPLE.

A participle is a declined part of speech, signifying the action or being of a thing, under the form of a noun adjective: it derives its name from taking part of a noun, as number, gender, case, and declension; and part of a verb, as tense and signification.

There are four kinds of PARTICIPLES.

1. One of the present tense, which in English ends in *ing*,[47] and in Latin, in *ans*, or *ens*; as, *loving*, amans; *teaching*, docens.

2. One of the future in *rus*, which signifies a likelihood or design of doing a thing; as, *amatūrus*, to love, or about to love.

3. One of the preterperfect tense, which has generally a passive signification, and in English ends in *d*, *t*, or *n*, as, *lectus*, read; *doctus*, taught; *visus*, seen.[48]

4. One of the future in *dus*, which also has a passive signification, and expresses a future action; as, *amandus*, to be loved.

Note 1. All participles are declined like nouns adjective: those in *ans* or *ens*, like *felix*, and those in *us*, like *bonus*.

---

[47] But the termination *ing* is not always a sign of a Latin participle, as, "John is building," *Ioannes ædificat*: nor, though generally, is it always the sign of the active voice, as, "the house was building," *domus ædificabātur*. The voice of the verb in such examples may easily be known by considering, whether the nom. case *performs*, or whether it *suffers* the action: if it performs the action, the voice is *active*; but *passive*, if it suffers the action.

[48] The English of the preterperfect participle of a deponent verb is "having," as *locūtus* from *loquor*, having spoken; of a passive verb, "being," as *lectus* from *lego*, being read; of a common verb, "having" or "being," as *adeptus* from *adipiscor*, having or being obtained.

2. Participles, losing the relation of time, become, what are called, participial adjectives; and, as such, are liable to comparison according to the general rules: as, *patiens*, patient, *patientior*, *patientissimus*.

THE UNDECLINED PARTS OF SPEECH.

An undeclined part of speech is that which undergoes no change of termination, to express its relation to other words.

The undeclined parts of speech are four:

Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition, Interjection.

OF AN ADVERB.

An adverb is a part of speech joined to verbs, adjectives, and nouns, to increase or diminish their signification: as, he speaks *well*; they write *badly*.

Many adverbs, especially those derived from adjectives and participles, are compared: as, *pulchrè*, fairly, *pulchrius*, *pulcherrimè*; *amantèr*, lovingly, *amantius*, *amantissimè*.

OF A CONJUNCTION.

A conjunction is a part of speech that joins words and sentences together: as, my father *and* my mother.

A copulative conjunction joins together words of a similar import: as, *et*, *atque*, and; *quoque*, also. A disjunctive conjunction implies a difference of import in the words it connects: as, *aut*, *vel*, or; *nec*, *neque*, nor.

Conjunctions, generally, are either copulative, or disjunctive.

OF A PREPOSITION.

A preposition is an undeclined word, pointing out various relations between the declined parts of speech: it is most commonly set before another word; as, *ad dextram*, on the right hand; or else it is joined in composition; as, *in-doctus*, unlearned.

These Prepositions have an Accusative Case after them.

Ad, to, *or* at.
Adversùm, *Adversus*, against.
Ante, before.
Apud, at, *or* near.
Circà, *circum*, *circiter*, about.
Cis, *citrà*, on this side.
Contrà, against.
Erga, towards.
Extra, without.
Infra, beneath.
Inter, between, *or* among.
Intra, within.
Juxta, beside, *or* nigh to.
Ob, for, *or* because of.
Penès, in the power of.
Per, by, *or* through.

Post, after, *or* since.
Præter, beside, *or* except.
Prope, nigh, *or* near to.
Propter, for, *or* because of.
Secundùm, according to.
Secus, by, *or* along.
Supra, above.
Trans, on the farther side.
Versùs, towards.
Ultra, beyond.
Usque, until.

Obs. *Versùs* is set after its case; as, *Londinum versùs*, towards London.

Likewise *penès* and *usque* may be so placed.

The Prepositions following have an Ablative Case after them.

A, *ab*, *abs*, from, *or* by.
Absque, without.
Coram, before, *or* in presence of.
Cum, with.
Dè, of, *or* from.
E, *ex*, of, from, *or* out of.
Palam, openly.
Præ, before, *or* in comparison of.
Pro, for.
Sine, without.
Tenus, up to, *or* as far as.

Obs. Tenus is set after its case: as, *Portâ tenus*, as far as the gate: and in the plural number the noun is commonly put in the genitive case; as, *aurium tenus*, up to the ears.

These Prepositions serve both to the Accusative and the Ablative Cases.

Clam, unknown to; as, *Clam*, *patrem*, or *patre*, without my father's knowledge.

In, for *into*, signifying motion, has an accusative case; as, *Eo in urbem*, I go into the city.

In, for *in* only, serves to the ablative case; as, *In te spes est*, my hope is in thee.

Sub: as, *Sub noctem*, a little before night.
Sub judice lis est, the matter is before the judge.

Subter: as, *Subter terram*, under the earth.
Subter aquâ, under the water.

Super: as, *Super lapidem*, upon a stone.
Super viridi fronde, upon a green bough.

OF AN INTERJECTION.

An interjection is a part of speech which betokens a sudden motion of the mind, be it grief, or joy, or other passion; as, *hei!* alas! *euge!* well done!

QUESTIONS ON THE ACCIDENCE.

Q. How many parts of speech are there, in Latin?—*A.* Eight.

Q. Into what are they divided?—*A.* Declined, and undeclined.

Q. What is the meaning of a "declined part of speech?"—*A.* That which possesses different endings.

Q. What are those endings called in nouns, pronouns, and participles?—*A.* Cases.

Q. What are they called in verbs?—*A.* Moods, tenses, and persons.

Q. How many forms of declining nouns are there?—*A.* Five; called "The five Declensions."

Q. How many forms of conjugating verbs are there?—*A.* Four; called "The four Conjugations."

Q. How are the five declensions of nouns distinguished?—*A.* By the ending of the genitive case.

Q. How are the four conjugations of verbs distinguished?—*A.* By the quantity of the vowel before *re* and *ris*.

Q. What is the mark of the first declension of nouns?—*A.* *Æ* diphthong, in the genitive case singular.

Q. What is the mark of the second declension?—*A.* *I*, in the genitive case singular.

Q. What is the mark of the third?—*A.* *Is*, in the genitive case singular.

Q. What of the fourth?—*A.* *ûs*, in the genitive case singular.

Q. What of the fifth?—*A.* *Eī*, in the genitive case singular.

Q. What is the mark of the first conjugation of verbs?—*A.* *ā* long, before *re* and *ris*.

Q. What is the mark of the second?—*A.* *ē* long, before *re* and *ris*.

Q. What of the third?—*A.* *ĕ* short, before *re* and *ris*.

Q. What of the fourth?—*A.* *ī* long, before *re* and *ris*.

Q. Have nouns adjective forms of declension peculiar to themselves?—*A.* No: they are declined like nouns substantive.

Q. What adjectives are formed like nouns of the first declension?—*A.* All which make their genitive case singular to end in *æ* diphthong.

Q. What adjectives are formed like the second?—*A.* All which make their genitive case singular to end in *i*.

Q. What like the third?—*A.* All which make their genitive case singular to end in *is*.

Q. How many degrees of comparison have adjectives?—*A.* Three degrees—the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

Q. Are all adjectives compared?—*A.* No: but those only, whose signification can be increased, or diminished.

Q. How many *general rules* are there for forming the comparison?—*A.* Two: of which one rule is for the comparative, and one for the superlative.

Q. Which is the first general rule?—*A.* That the comparative is made from the first case of the positive which ends

in *i*, by adding *or* for the masculine and feminine genders, and *us* for the neuter.

Q. Which is the second general rule of comparison? — *A.* That the superlative degree is made by adding *simus*, to the first case of the positive which ends in *i*.

Q. Is there any leading exception to the formation of the superlative? — *A.* Yes: adjectives in *er* add *rimus* for this degree; as *pulcher*, *pulcherrĭmus*.

Q. What leading exception is there, with respect to adjectives which end in *us* pure, like *pius*? — *A.* Such adjectives are compared by *magis*, and *maxĭmè*.

Q. Does this exception apply to adjectives in *quus*? — *A.* No: for adjectives in *quus* are formed according to the general rules; as, *antĭquus*, ancient, *antiquior*, *antiquissĭmus*.

Q. What adjectives in *lis* form the superlative degree irregularly?—*A.* *Agĭlis*, *facĭlis*, *gracĭlis*, *humĭlis*, *similis*, — by changing *is* into *limus*.

Q. How are pronouns declined? — *A.* For the most part, like nouns.

Q. What pronouns have forms of declension of their own? — *A.* *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*; *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*; *qui*, *quis*; with their compounds.

Q. Into how many kinds are verbs divided? — *A.* Two; active and passive.

Q. In what do active verbs end? — *A.* In *o*.

Q. In what do passive verbs end? — *A.* In *or*.

Q. Are all verbs in *o*, active? — *A.* Yes: but some are transitive, and some intransitive.

Q. Why is a verb called transitive? — *A.* Because the action passes from the nominative case of the subject, to the accusative case of the object.

Q. Why is a verb called intransitive or neuter? — *A.* Because the action, or being, ends in the nominative case: or because the object of the action is not in the accusative case.

Q. Why is a verb called active? — *A.* Because its nominative case or subject *performs* the action.

Q. Why is a verb called passive? — *A.* Because its nominative case or subject *suffers* the action.

Q. Are all verbs in *or*, passive? — *A.* No: for some verbs in *or*, are also named deponent.

Q. Why is a verb called deponent? — *A.* Because it *lays aside* its passive signification, and takes an active, either transitive, or intransitive.

THE THREE CONCORDS EXPLAINED.

There are three Concords, or Agreements, in Latin:

1. Between the nominative case or subject, and the verb.
2. Between the substantive and the adjective.
3. Between the antecedent and the relative.

THE FIRST CONCORD.

A verb agrees with its nominative case or subject, in number and person.

In order to find out the subject, ask the question *who*, or *what?* with the verb; and the word that answers to the question, is the subject to the verb; as, *who reads? who regards not?*

The *master* reads, but *ye* regard not:
Præceptor legit, vos verò negligĭtis.

Sometimes an infinitive mood, or a sentence, is the subject to a verb; and sometimes the substantive to an adjective; and in this case the adjective, or the relative, must be in the neuter gender: as,

Dilucŭlô surgĕre saluberrĭmum est:
To rise betimes in the morning is most wholesome.

In tempŏre veni, quod omnium est primum:
I came in season, which is the chief thing of all.

Two or more subjects singular have a verb plural, which agrees with the subject of the most worthy person: *And note*, that the first person is more worthy than the second, and the second more worthy than the third: as,

Ego et tu sumus in tuto: I and thou are in safety.

Observe, that "ego *et* tu" being equivalent to *nos*, the verb "sumus" is therefore in the first person and plural number; as, in English, "I and thou" are the same as *we*.

The substantive which comes next after the verb, and answers to the question *whom*, or *what?* made by the verb, shall commonly be in the accusative case; except the verb, by some particular rule, requires a different case after it: as,

Si cupis placēre magistro, utĕre diligentiâ:
If you desire to please the master, use diligence.

Obs. In this example, *magistro* is in the dative, and *diligentiâ* the ablative case, according to the rules of Syntax.

THE SECOND CONCORD.

When you have an adjective, ask this question, *who*, or *what?* with the adjective; and the word that answers to the question, shall be the substantive to the adjective.

The adjective, whether it be a noun, pronoun, or participle, agrees with its substantive in case, gender, and number; as,

Amīcus certus in re incertâ cernĭtur:
A sure friend is tried in a doubtful matter.

Obs. 1. The masculine gender is more worthy than the feminine, and the feminine more worthy than the neuter. *Also note*, that in things without life, the neuter gender is most worthy: and in this case, though the substantive, or the antecedent, be of the masculine or feminine gender, (and not of the neuter,) yet may the adjective or relative be put in the neuter gender: as,

Arcus et calămi sunt bona:
The bow and arrows are good.

Arcus et calămi, quæ fregisti:
The bow and arrows, *which* thou hast broken.

Obs. 2. Many substantives singular will have an adjective plural; which adjective shall agree with the substantive of the most worthy gender: as,

Rex et regīna beāti:
The king and the queen are blessed.

Also, When in English the word *thing* is put with an adjective, you may in Latin leave out the substantive, and put the adjective in the neuter gender: as,

Multa me impediêrunt:
Many things *have hindered me.*

THE THIRD CONCORD.

When you have a relative, ask this question, *who*, or *what?* with the verb; and the word that answers to the question, shall be the antecedent to the relative.

The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person: as,

Vir sapit, qui pauca loquĭtur:
The man is wise, *who* speaks few words.

bs. 1. If the relative refers to two antecedents or more, it s the plural number, and most worthy gender and per-: as,

u multùm dormis, et sæpè potas; quæ ambò sunt corpŏri inimīca:

hou sleepest much, and drinkest often; *both which* things are hurtful to the body.

bs. 2. When the English word *that* may be turned into or *which*, it is a relative; otherwise it is a conjunction, ex-sed in Latin by *quòd*, or *ut;* and in making Latin, the unction may be put away, by turning the nominative case ne verb into the accusative, and the verb into the infinitive d: as,

audeo quòd tu benè vales; or, *gaudeo te benè valēre:*

am glad *that* thou art in good health.

RULES FOR THE GENDERS OF NOUNS.

Although the Rules for the Genders of Nouns, and the Formation of the Preterpe Tense and the Supines of Verbs, are in English, yet the individual exceptions (w they are numerous) have been thrown into verse, to assist the memory of the lea but among these, he will find other Latin words introduced for the sake o metre:—*cum*, with; *ac, at, que, atque*, and; *sic*, so; *cum prole*, with its compa *at, sed*, but; *ex* (do) *semper faciunt* (si), from *do* they always make *si; item, qu simul*, also; *dat*, gives; *formant*, they form or make; *vetus*, an old or obsolete w *ritè*, according to custom, rightly.

The Genders of Nouns are divided into *general* and *spe* rules; the former relating to the signification of the noun, the latter to the ending of the noun increasing, or not incr ing, in the genitive case singular.

THE GENERAL RULES. I. *Substantives.*

The names of males,[1] rivers, months, and winds, are ma line; as, *rex, Tibris, Octŏber, Auster.*

The names of females, cities, countries, islands, and t are feminine;[2] as, *regĭna, Elis, Græcia, Britannia, cedru*

Nouns applied both to males and females are common; *hic* and *hæc parens*, a parent.

[1] Except a few nouns, which, denoting males originally, follow the cial Rules: *opĕræ*, labourers; *vigiliæ* and *excubiæ*, watchmen; *copiæ*, f or troops; *auxilia*, auxiliary troops; *mancipium*, a slave; *acroāma* jester, an actor.

[2] Exceptions.—*a.* Of the names of *cities* or *towns*, these are *masc* Sulmo, Agrăgas, Tunes, Croto, Hippo, Narbo, Frusĭno, with plurals Nouns in *um*, or the Greek *on*, plurals in *a -orum*, and indeclinables in *y*, are *neuter;* with Argos, Gadir, Tuder, Nepet, Hispal, Tibur. *Ana* masculine or neuter. The names of Italian towns in *e*, as Præneste sometimes neuter.—*b.* Of the names of *countries*, those in *um*, plurals in *a*, are *neuter:* but Bospŏrus, Pontus, and Hellespontus *masculine.*—*c.* Of the names of *islands*, some in *um*, and the Egy *Delta*, are *neuter.*—*d.* Of the names of *trees*, spinus, oleaster and p *ter, are masculine;* and siler, suber, thus, robur, and acer, are *neuter*

When, under one and the same gender, both sexes are signified, the noun is epicene; as, *hic passer*, any sparrow; *hæc aquĭla*, any eagle: but to specify the sex, *mas* is added for the male, and *fœmĭna* for the female; as, "mas passer," a cock-sparrow; fœmĭna passer," a hen-sparrow.[3]

THE SPECIAL RULES.

First Special Rule.—Nouns not increasing in the genitive case singular are feminine; as, *caro carnis*, *nubes nubis*.

Exceptions.

a. The compounds of *as* are masculine; as, *centussis*: likewise, —

Adria,[4] *cum* cucŭmis, vepres, natālis, aquālis,
Callis, caulis, follis, collis, mensis *et* ensis,
Fustis, funis, panis, crinis, *et* ignis *et* orbis,
Cassis, fascis, torris, sentis, vectis *et* unguis,
Atque planēta, comēta, liēnis, postis *et* axis.

Nouns in *as* and *es*, from the first declension of the Greek, are masculine; as, *tiāras*, *acinăces*.

Nouns in *er*, and *os* or *us*, are masculine; as, *venter*, *logos*, *annus*: but these nouns in *us* are feminine;—

Antidŏtus, costus, diphthongus, byssus, abyssus,
Chrystallus, synŏdus, sapphīrus, erēmus *et* Arctus,
Carbăsus, hyssōpus, methŏdus, nardúsque papȳrus,
Cum tribus, *et* colus, *et* manus, Idus, ficus, acúsque,
Et domus, *et* vannus, portĭcus, alvus, humus.

b. Nouns in *um*, and nouns undeclined, are neuter; as, *regnum*, *nihil*.

Nouns in *e*. gen. *is*, and *on* gen. *i*, are neuter; as, *mare*, *rete*, *barbĭton*: —

Cum chaos, hippomănes, virus, pelăgúsque nepenthes,
Ac melos, *ac* panăces, *sic* cacōēthes, epos.

---

[3] The term epicene is applied more or less to the names of all the inferior animals in which the sexual distinction is not obvious, or not necessary for the general purposes of language. The English idiom differs, in this respect, from the Latin; for while we consider many such words to be neuter, as of a mouse, we say "*It* is an animal, timid in *its* nature," and even of a child, "How sweetly *it* smiles!"—the Latins connected them, with great propriety, to those genders only which are significant of sex.

[4] *Adria*, or *Hadria*, the Adriatic sea.

Vulgus is sometimes neuter, and sometimes masculine.

c. *Ficus* (a disease), *specus*, and *canālis*, are doubtful;—

Cum cytīsus, balănus, clunis, finis, penus, annis,
Pampĭnus, *et* corbis, linter, torquísque phasēlus,
Lecўthus, *ac* atŏmus, grossus, pharus *et* paradīsus.

Second Special Rule.—Nouns are feminine, which take the accent on the penult of the genitive case increasing; as, *res réi*, *virtus virtū'tis*.[5]

Exceptions.

a. These nouns are masculine,—*dens* and *as*, with their compounds; as, *bidens*, *bes*, *semis*; also, *hydrops*, *spadix*,—

Sal, sol, ren, splen, pes, mons, pons, fons, sermo, meridies, thorax, adămas, magnésque, lebésque, tapésqué.

Polysyllables[6] in *n*, or *ens*, and the names of substances and numbers in *o*, are masculine; as, *lichen*, *oriens*, *curculio*, *senio*.

Nouns in *er*, *or*, and *os*, are masculine; as, *crater*, *honor*, *flos*: but *cos*, *dos*, and *eos*, are feminine.

b. Polysyllables in *ar*, and *al*, are neuter; as, *laquear*, *capĭtal*: with the following,—

Lac, far, ver, æs, cor, par, spinther, os -ossis, *et* -oris,
Rus, thus, jus, crus, pus, mel, fel, vas-vasis, *et* alec.

c. *Calx* (the heel), *stirps* (the trunk of a tree), *scrobs*, and

[5] In the Eton Introduction, this rule is headed, "Nouns increasing long," and the third Special Rule, "Nouns increasing short;" and in a Publication, entitled *Eton, in English*, these rules are thus translated—page 67, "Nouns increasing long in the gen. case are feminine;" page 69, "Nouns increasing short in the gen. case are masculine;"—so that the titles of the former work, which are obviously inaccurate, seem, by an oversight, to have been made the rules of the latter. But the genders of nouns increasing do not depend on the quantity itself, the *syllăba longa*, or the *syllăba brevis*, of the penult of the gen. case; but, as is expressly stated in the Eton Rules, on the "syllăba *acūta*," and the "syllăba *gravis*" of the gen. case increasing. Hence it is, that all monosyllables, which increase, are referred to the second Special Rule, either as examples to it, or as exceptions from it; and why? simply, because in the gen. case they become dissyllables, and, as such, take the accent, the "syllăba acūta," on the penult, *without regard to quantity*: thus, nux nŭcis, crux crŭcis, trabs trăbis, spes spĕi, nex nĕcis, strix strĭgis, fax făcis, pix pĭcis, nix nĭvis, etc., though they have the short increment, are nevertheless said to be feminine according to the second Special Rule. The different turn of expression which we have given to these rules may perhaps prevent them from being misunderstood.

[6] A polysyllable means, properly, a word which has *many* syllables, and is generally applied to words of *more than three* syllables: in this place, however, it is used to denote a "noun of more syllables than one."

idens, are doubtful. *Dies* is doubtful in the singular number, but masculine in the plural.

Third Special Rule.—Nouns are masculine, which take the accent on the antepenult of the genitive case increasing; as, *anguis, sánguĭnis.*

Exceptions.

a. Hyperdissyllables[7] in *do-dĭnis*, and *go-gĭnis*, are feminine; as, *dulcēdo dulcedĭnis, compāgo compagĭnis.*

Nouns from the Greek in *as*, or *is*, are feminine; as *lampas, typis:* with these nouns, *merges, climax, pecus-pecŭdis,* —

Grando, fides, compes, teges, *et* seges, arbor, hyems*que*,
Sic forfex, pellex, carex, icon*que* supellex,
Coxendix, chlamys, appendix, sindon*que*, filix*que.*

b. Nouns in *a, en, ar, put, ur, us*, are neuter: but *pecten*, id *furfur*, are masculine.

The names of plants and fruits in *er*, are neuter; as, *gingĭber, iber:* likewise *tuber* (a mushroom), *uber, pecus-pecŏris,* —

Æquor, verber, iter, marmor*que* cadāver, ador*que.*

c. Forceps, and the following nouns, are doubtful; —

Pulvis, adeps, cortex, cardo, margo, cinis, obex,
Sic pumex, imbrex, *et* onyx *cum prole*, silex*que.*

II. *Adjectives.*

The Gender of an adjective is determined by the General or Special Rule of the substantive, to which it is joined.

Each case of an adjective includes all the genders, under one, two, or three terminations.

Adjectives of one ending represent thereby the three genders; as, *hic, hæc, hoc*, felix.

In adjectives of two endings, the first is common, and the second neuter; as, *hic* and *hæc* tristis, *hoc* triste.

In adjectives of three endings, the first is masculine, the second feminine, and the third neuter; as, *hic* bonus, *hæc* bona, *hoc* bonum.

Some adjectives, from their nature and use, become substantives; as, *pauper, puber, dives, comes, locŭples.*

---

[7] Hyperdissyllables, *i. e.* words of more than two syllables; as, *dulcēdo, compāgo.*

Pedester, and the following adjectives in *er*,—

Campester, volŭcer, celĕber, celer, *atque* salūber,
Ac alăcer, sylvester, equester, acris*que* paluster,—

have a peculiar form in the nom. and voc. cases singular; as, *pedester*, *pedestris*, *pedestre*, or hic and hæc *pedestris*, hoc *pedestre*.

NOUNS HETEROCLITE.

Heteroclites are nouns irregular, or defective.

1. Irregular nouns are either variant, or redundant.

a. Variant nouns are such as deviate from the common forms of declension: as, *Pergămus*—plural, *Pergăma; cælum*—plural, *cæli; delicium*—plural, *deliciæ*.

b. Redundant nouns are those which have more than one common form of declension; as, *rastrum*, *frænum*, *filum*, *capistrum*—plural, *rastri* and *rastra*, *fræni* and *fræna*, etc.

Sibilus, *jocus*, *locus*, make in the plural, *sibĭli* and *sibĭla*, *joci* and *joca*, *loci* (topics) and *loca*.

Domus, *colus*, *cornus*, *ficus* (a fig), *lacus*, *laurus*, *penus*, *pinus*, *quercus*, are of the second and fourth declension, though not in every case.

2. Defective nouns either have not all the cases, or they have not both numbers: they are of several kinds.

a. Aptotes are nouns undeclined; as, *fas*, *instar*, *tot*, *quot*, *Tempe;* many nouns in *u* and *i*, and the cardinal numbers from *quatuor* (four), to *centum* (a hundred), inclusive.

b. Diptotes have only two cases; as, *fors forte*, *spontis sponte*, *jugĕris jugĕre*, *verbĕris verbĕre*, *impĕtis impĕte*.

c. Triptotes have only three cases; as, *opis* (genitive), *opem*, *ope; preci*, *precem*, *prece; vicis*, *vicem*, *vice*.

Frugis and *ditiōnis* want only the nominative singular.

d. Proper names, being applied to individuals only, have no plural number; as, *Cæsar*, *Roma*, *Tibris*.

Some nouns, from the nature of the things they express, as *tritĭcum* (wheat), *juventus* (youth), *aurum* (gold), are used only in the singular number. Others are used only in the plural form; thus, many names of places, as *Gabii*, *Athēnæ;* also these common nouns, —

Manes, majōres, cancelli, lĭberi, *et* antes,
Lendes, *et* lemŭres, fasti *simul*, *atque* minōres: —

Exuviæ, phalĕræ, grates*que*, manubiæ, *et* Idus,
Antiæ, *et* inducĭæ ; *simul* insidiæ*que*, minæ*que*,
Excubiæ, nonæ, nugæ, tricæ*que* calendæ,
Quisquiliæ, thermæ, cunæ, diræ, exequiæ*que*,
Feriæ, *et* inferiæ ; *sic* primitiæ*que*, plagæ*que*
Nuptiæ *item*, *et* lactes, *et* valvæ, divitiæ*que* :—
Mœnia, *cum* tesquis, præcordia, lustra *(ferārum)*,
Arma, mapalia ; *sic* bellaria, munia, castra.

FORMATION

OF THE

PRETERPERFECT TENSE AND THE SUPINES.

1. *The Preterperfect Tense of* SIMPLE *Verbs.*

IN THE FIRST CONJUGATION,

s in the present tense forms the preterperfect in *avi ;* as, no, navi ; vocĭto, vocĭtas, vocitāvi.

ut lavo makes lavi, juvo juvi, do dedi, sto steti; and these lve, nexo, seco, neco, mico, plico, frico, domo, tono, sono, o, veto, cubo, form *ui* rather than *avi ;* as, secui, necui, ui.

IN THE SECOND CONJUGATION,

s in the present tense forms the preterperfect in *ui ;* as, eo, nigres, nigrui ; sorbeo, sorbui (and sorpsi).

ut *deo* forms *di ;* as, sedeo sedi : except ardeo arsi, rideo suadeo suasi ; and these four which admit the reduplica- — pendeo pependi, mordeo momordi, spondeo spospondi, leo totondi.

eo is made *si*, after *l* or *r ;* as, urgeo ursi : but mulgeo i and mulxi, frigeo frixi, lugeo luxi, augeo auxi.

eo forms *levi ;* as, fleo flevi : except oleo olui.

eo forms *vi ;* as, ferveo fervi (and ferbui), nivĕo nivi (nixi).

Sed maneo mansi, jubeo jussi, neo nevi,
Luceo luxi, torquĕo torsi, *et* mulceo mulsi,
Hæreo *vult* hæsi, cieo civi, vieo*que* viēvi.

THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

The preterperfect tense of this Conjugation is formed variously.

Bo is made *bi;* as, lambo lambi: except scribo scripsi, nubo nupsi, cumbo cubui.

Co is made *ci;* as, ico ici: but vinco makes vici, parco peperci and parci, dico dixi, duco duxi.

Do is made *di;* as mando mandi: except,—

Findo fidi, fundo fudi, tundo tutŭdi*que*,
Pendo pependi, tendo tetendi, cædo cecīdi,
Sed cedo cessi, cecĭdi cado, scindo scidi*que;* —
Vado, rado, lædo, ludo, divĭdo, trudo,
Claudo, plaudo, rodo, *ex* do *semper faciunt* si.

Go and *ho* are made *xi;* as, jungo junxi, traho traxi: but *go*, following *r*, is made *si;* as, spargo sparsi: except lego legi, ago egi, —

Et tango tetĭgi, pungo punxi pupŭgi*que*,
Et frango fregi, pango pegi[8] *quoque* panxi.

Lo is made *lui;* as, colo colui: except cello cecŭli, —

Li psallo *et* sallo *formant*, pello pepŭli*que*,
Et vello velli vulsi *quoque*, fallo fefelli.

Mo forms *ui;* as, vomo vomui: except emo emi; —

Psi como, promo, demo, sumo — *at* premo pressi.

No is made *vi;* as, sino sivi: but lino forms levi, lini, and livi, temno tempsi, —

Sterno stravi, sperno sprevi, cerno*que* crevi,
Gigno, pono, cano — genui, posui, cecĭni*que*.

Po is made *psi;* as, scalpo scalpsi: except rumpo rupi, strepo strepui, crepo crepui.

Quo is made *qui;* as, linquo liqui: but coquo coxi.

Ro is made *vi;* as, sero *(to plant)* sevi: but sero *(to set in order)* forms serui, —

Verro verri *et* versi, uro ussi, gero gessi,
Quæro quæsīvi, tero trivi, curro cucurri.

So is made *sivi;* as, capesso capessīvi (and capessi): except facesso facessi, viso visi, pinso pinsui.

[8] "Pegi," one of the preterperfect tenses of "pango," is supposed by some writers to admit the reduplication of the present and become *pepĭgi:* the passages, in which it is found, are disputed by Vossius and others. "Pago" was anciently used for *pango*, and, according to the Eton Introduction, makes *pepĭgi* in the sense of "paciscor," to covenant.

Sco is made *vi;* as, pasco pavi: except posco poposci, disco didĭci, quinisco quexi.

To is made *ti;* as, verto verti: except sisto stĭti, mitto misi, peto petīvi, sterto stertui, meto messui: *ecto* forms *exi;* as, necto nexi (and nexui), pecto pexi (and pexui).

Vo is made *vi;* as, volvo volvi: except vivo vixi.

Xo forms *ui;* as, texo texui.

Io is made *i;* as, facio feci, jacio jeci, capio cepi, pario pepĕri: but cupio makes cupīvi;—

Xi lacio specio *formant*, rapio rapui*que*,
Et quatio quassi, sapio sapui *atque* sapīvi.

Uo is made *ui;* as, statuo statui: but pluo forms pluvi and plui, struo struxi, fluo fluxi.

IN THE FOURTH CONJUGATION,

Is in the present tense forms the preterperfect in *ivi;* as, scio scis scivi; except venio *(to come)* veni, veneo *(to be sold)* venii, salio salui, amicio amicui,—

Raucio rausi, farcio farsi, sarcio sarsi,
Sepio sepsi, sentio sensi, fulcio fulsi,
Haurio *item* hausi, sancio sanxi, vincio vinxi.

II. *The Preterperfect Tense of* COMPOUND *Verbs.*

a. The simple verb and its compound make the same preterperfect tense; as, *doceo docui, edoceo edocui.* But the reduplication of the simple verb is retained only in præcurro, excurro, repungo, do, disco, sto, posco.

Plico, with *sub* or a noun, forms *plicāvi:* but applĭco, complĭco, replĭco and explĭco, form both *ui* and *avi.*

Compounds of *oleo* form *olēvi:* except redolui, subolui.

Compounds of *pungo* form *punxi:* but repungo makes both repupŭgi and repunxi.

Compounds of *do*, in the third conjugation, form *didi;* as, reddo reddĭdi: except abscondo abscondi. And the compounds of *sto* form *stiti;* as, consto constĭti.

b. Some verbs, when compounded, change the first vowel of the present and the preterperfect tense into e; as,

Damno, lacto, sacro, fallo, arceo, tracto, fatiscor,
Cando *(vetus)*, capto, jacto, patior, gradior*que*,
Partio, carpo, patro, scando, spargo, pario*que* :—

except prædamno, pertracto, and retracto.

Compounds of *pario* make *ui:* except compĕri, repĕri.
Compounds of *pasco* form *pavi:* except compescui, dispescui.

c. These verbs, in composition, change the first vowel into i; as,

— Habeo, lateo, salio, statuo, cado, lædo,
Et tango, placeo, cano, quæro, cædo cecīdi,
Sic egeo, teneo, taceo, sapio, rapio*que*:—

except antehabeo, posthabeo; complaceo, perplaceo.
Compounds of *cano* form *ui;* as, concĭno concinui.
Compounds of *calco* and *salto* change *a* into *u;* as, conculco, resulto: those of *claudo, quatio,* and *lavo,* drop the vowel *a;* as, occlūdo, percutio, proluo, diluo.

d. These verbs, compounded, change the first vowel in the present tense into i—but not in the preterperfect; as,

Facio *with a preposition,* ago, emo, sedeo, rego, frango,
Et capio, jacio, lacio, specio, premo, pango:—

except coĕmo, supersedeo, perăgo, satăgo, cogo, dego, pergo, surgo; except also de- op- circum- re-pango.
Lego, compounded with *re, per, præ, sub, trans,* or *ad,* retains the vowel of the present; as, perlĕgo: the rest change it into *i;* and of these, intellĭgo, dilĭgo, neglĭgo, make *lexi.*

III. *The Supines of* SIMPLE *Verbs.*

The Supines of verbs are formed according to the terminations of the preterperfect tense.
The reduplication is dropt in the supine; as, mo-mordi morsum; to-tondi tonsum; except sto, steti, statum; do, dedi, datum.
Bi adds *tum;* as, bibi bibĭtum.
Ci is made *ctum;* as, ici ictum, feci factum, jeci jactum.
Di is made *sum;* as, vidi visum: but pandi, sedi, scidi, fidi, fodi, double *s;* as, passum; tutŭdi makes tunsum, cecīdi cæsum, —

Et cecĭdi casum, tensum tentum*que* tetendi.

Gi is made *ctum;* as, legi lectum, pegi pepĭgi*que*
Et pactum, fregi fractum, tetĭgi *quoque* tactum,
Egi actum, pupŭgi punctum — fugi fugĭtum*que.*

Li is made *sum;* as, salli salsum: pepŭli pulsum, cecŭli culsum, fefelli falsum, velli vulsum.
Mi, ni, pi, qui, are thus made *tum;* rupi ruptum, —

Emi emptum, veni ventum, cecini *quoque* cantum,
Et capio cepi captum, liqui *quoque* lictum.

Ri is made *sum;* as, verri versum: but pepĕri partum.
Si is made *sum;* as, visi visum, torsi torsum (and tortum), idulsi indulsum (and indultum): but misi has missum, —
Ussi ustum, gessi gestum, fulsi *quoque* fultum,
Hausi haustum, sarsi sartum, farsi *quoque* fartum.

Psi is made *ptum;* as, scripsi scriptum.
Ti is made *tum;* as, sisto, stiti, statum: but verti versum.
Vi is made *tum;* as, potāvi potātum (and sometimes *tum*, by contraction), sevi satum: —
Sed pavi pastum, lavi lotum *atque* lavātum
Et lautum, venīvi venum, solvo solūtum,
Favi fautum, cavi cautum, volvo volutum,
Singultīvi-ultum, sepelīvi *ritè* sepultum.

Ui is made *itum;* as, domui domĭtum: but verbs in *uo* except ruo ruĭtum) make *utum;* as, exui exūtum.
But texui has textum, cellui celsum, messui messum, —
Et secui sectum, necui nectum, fricuí*que*
Frictum, miscui *item* mistum, *et* amicui *dat* amictum;
Torrui *item* tostum, docui doctum, tenuí*que*
Tentum, consului consultum, alui altum alĭtúm*que;*
Sic salui saltum, colui cultum, seruí*que*
Sertum, pinsui *item* pistum, raptum rapui*que:* —
Xum necto, pecto *formant*—*et* censeo censum.

Xi is made *ctum;* as, vinxi vinctum: but these five, inxi, pinxi, strinxi, rinxi, cast out *n;* and flexi, plexi, fixi, uxi, make *xum.*

IV. *The Supines of* COMPOUND *Verbs.*

The compound supine is, in general, formed like the simple supine; as, *docui doctum, edocui edoctum.*
But the compounds of *tundo* form *tusum:* those of *ruo, utum:* of *salio, sultum:* of *sero* (to sow), *situm.*
Compounds of captum, factum, jactum, raptum, cantum, ertum, sparsum, carptum, fartum, change the vowel *a* into *i:* as, decipio deceptum, corripio correptum.
Compounds of *edo* form *esum:* but comĕdo has both comtum and comēsum.
Compounds of *nosco*, except cognĭtum and agnĭtum, form *itum.*

V. *The Preterperfect Tense of Verbs in* OR.

The manner of forming the preterperfect tense of passive verbs has already been shown.

In verbs deponent — which are chiefly but the passive forms of obsolete active verbs — the preterperfect tense is found by tracing its origin to the active voice; thus, of miror, *mirāris vel* mirāre, *first* conjugation, may be traced miro, *miras*, mirāvi; mirātum, mirātu; *mirātus sum* vel *fui*.

But some verbs in *or*, which are not passive, are considered deponent, and others, common; these are irregular:

Apiscor, aptus sum, (obs.) *whence*	Nanciscor, nactus sum,
Adipiscor, adeptus sum,	Nascor, natus sum,
Assentior, assensus sum,	Nitor, nisus *vel* nixus sum,
Com-miniscor, -mentus sum,	Obliviscor, oblītus sum,
Exper-giscor, -rectus sum,	Opperior, oppertus sum,
Experior, expertus sum,	Ordior, orsus sum,
Fateor, fassus sum,	Orior, ortus sum,
Fatiscor, fessus sum,	Paciscor, pactus sum,
Fruor, fructus *vel* fruĭtus sum,	Patior, passus sum,
Gradior, gressus sum,	Proficiscor, profectus sum,
Irascor, irātus sum,	Queror, questus sum,
Labor, lapsus sum,	Reor, ratus sum,
Loquor, locūtus sum,	Sequor, secūtus sum,
Metior, mensus sum,	Tueor, tutus *vel* tuĭtus sum,
Misereor, misertus sum,	Ulciscor, ultus sum,
Morior, mortuus sum,	Utor, usus sum.

VI. To some verbs are assigned a *passive as well as an active preterperfect tense;* as,

Cœno, cœnāvi, cœnātus sum;	Mereor, merui, merĭtus sum;
Juro, jurāvi, jurātus sum;	Libet, libuit, libĭtum est;
Nubo, nupsi, nupta sum;	Licet, licuit, licĭtum est;
Placeo, placui, placĭtus sum;	Piget, piguit, pigĭtum est;
Poto, potāvi, potus sum;	Pudet, puduit, pudĭtum est;
Prandeo, prandi, pransus sum;	Tædet, tæduit, (pertæsum est;)
Suesco, suevi, suetus sum;	Titŭbo, titubāvi, titubātus sum.

VII. *The Preterperfect Tense of a neuter passive is thus formed:—*

Gaudeo gavīsus sum, fido fisus, *et* audeo
Ausus sum, fio factus, soleo solĭtus sum.

The following verbs want the Preterperfect Tense: —

Polleo, nideo, vergo, ambĭgo, glisco, fatisco; *inceptives*[9] in *co*, as puerasco; and all *meditatives*, but parturio, esurio; with those passive verbs which want the active supine; as, metuor, timeor.

These verbs seldom, or never, admit a supine:

Respuo, linquo, luo, metuo, cluo, frigeo, calveo,
Lambo, mico (micui), rudo, scabo, parco (peperci),
Dispesco, posco, disco, compesco, quinisco,
Dego, ango, sugo, lingo, ningo, satăgóque,
Psallo, volo, nolo, malo, tremo, strideo, strido,
Flaveo, liveo, avet, paveo, conniveo, fervet.

Likewise *sterto*, *timeo*, *luceo;* and *arceo*, making in its compounds *ercĭtum*, as exerceo, exercĭtum.

Compounds of *nuo* and *gruo*, as renuo, ingruo; of *cado*, as occĭdo, want the supine: except occĭdo occāsum, recĭdo recāsum.

Neuter verbs of the second conjugation, making *ui* in the preterperfect tense, generally want the supine: except oleo,—

Et valeo, caleo, doleo, placeo, taceóque,
Pareo, *item* careo, noceo, jaceo, lateóque.

---

[9] *a.* Inceptives commonly end in *sco*, and denote a beginning of what is signified in the primitive verb, e. gr. *calesco*, I grow, or become, warm, from *caleo*, I am warm. *b.* Meditatives end in *ŭrio*, and signify a longing desire or wish, e. gr. *esurio*, I wish to eat. *c.* Diminutives lessen the force of their primitives, e. gr. *cantillo*, I sing a little. *d.* Frequentatives denote frequent action, e. gr. *lectĭto*, I often read.

SYNTAX;[1]

OR,

THE CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES.

THE FIRST CONCORD.

Between the Nominative Case and the Verb.

Verbum personāle concordat cum nominatīvo, numĕro et personâ: ut,

A verb personal agrees with its nom. case or subject, in number and person: as,

Sera nunquam est ad bonos mores via.[1a]—SEN.

Nominatīvus pronomĭnum rarò exprimĭtur, nisi distinctiōnis aut emphăsis gratiâ: ut,

The nom. case of pronouns is seldom expressed, unless for the sake of distinction or emphasis: as,

Vos damnâstis: (more emphatical than "damnâstis" by itself.)
Tu es patrōnus, tu parens, si deŏris tu, perĭimus.
Fertur atrocia flagitia designâsse.—OVID.

Aliquando oratio, aut modus infinītus, est verbo nominatīvus: ut,

Sometimes an infinitive mood, or a sentence, is the subject to a verb: as,

Ingenuas didicisse fidelĭtèr artes
Emollit mores, nec sinit esse feros.[2]

---

[1] For the meaning of the terms *Syntax*, *Concord*, *Government*, &c., see "The General Rules of Construction." — *a.* The nom. case is that form of the noun which denotes the *subject* of a proposition. It is not always expressed, being implied in the ending of the verb, or easily understood from the context. For the latter reason, the predicate also is sometimes omitted, especially the substantive verb in general maxims; e. gr. "quot homĭnes, tot sententiæ," i. e. *sunt*—Anglicè, "Many men, many minds." *b.* It should be remarked, that in every sentence in which *action* is predicated, the subject uniformly represents the *agent* of an active and a deponent verb, and the *patient* of a passive verb: — except a very few verbs in *o*, as *vapŭlo*, *veneo*, *exŭlo*.

[2] *a.* An infinitive mood, as the subject of a sentence, may have an adjective in concord with it. Several instances occur in Persius; as "*hoc*

Aliquando adverbium cum genitīvo: ut,

Sometimes an adverb with genitive is the subject: as,

Partim virōrum cecidērunt in bello.

Exceptions.

1. Verba infinitīvi modi frequentèr pro nominatīvo accusatīvum ante se statuunt, conunctiōne *quòd*, vel *ut*, omissâ: ut,

1. Verbs of the infinitive mood often set before them an acc. case, instead of a nominative with the conjunction *quòd*, or *ut*: as,

Te rediisse incolŭmem gaudeo.[3]

2. Verbum inter duos nominatīvos diversōrum numerōrum positŭm, cum alterŭtro concordāre potest: ut,

2. A verb, placed between two nominatives of different numbers, may agree with either: as,

Amantium iræ amōris integratio est.—Ter.
Pectus quoque robŏra fiunt.[4]—Ovid.

3. Nomen multitudĭnis singulāre quandōque verbo plurāli jungĭtur: ut,

3. A noun of multitude, singular, is sometimes joined to a verb plural: as,

Pars abiēre. Uterque deluduntur dolis.[5]

---

idēre"—"Scire *tuum* nihil est?" Is your knowledge nothing? "Velle suum cuique est." This mode of expression must not be extended beyond the practice of the classics. *b.* When the infinitive has an adjective or a substantive, forming with itself the subject, or the predicate, the adjective or the substantive is put in the acc. case; e. gr. "*Rudem esse* omnīnò in nostris poētis, inertissĭmæ segnitiæ est"—Cic. "Nescīre autem, quid antĕquam natus sis, accidisset, id est semper *esse puĕrum.*" Ibid.

[3] *a.* But this Latin usage is not always to be resolved by *quòd*, or *ut*: after words or phrases of doubting with *non* included, it is explained by *quin*, and without *non* by *an*; e. gr. "non dubĭto, te factūrum esse," or *quin factūrus sis*; "dubĭto, te factūrum esse," or *an factūrus*. *b.* This construction of the acc. with an infinitive is used after verbs of *thinking* and *speaking*, e. gr. puto, existĭmo, censeo, arbĭtror, sentio, dico; after gaudeo, intelligo, video, audio, simŭlo, fateor, obliviscor, memĭni, polliceor, scio, ostendo, etc.: also after the impersonal verbs constat, decet, liquet, oportet, and such expressions as "perspicuum est," "innātum est," "est valdè decōrum." It is occasionally elliptical—"Méne incepto desistĕre victam?" Virg. *c.* It must however be observed, that to denote a motive or cause, the conjunction *quòd* should be expressed; and *ut* with a subjunctive, to mark a purpose, result or consequence. *Ut* is always used after verbs of *entreating*, *commanding*, and *exhorting*. Fac, velim, nolim, malim, licet, necesse est, fit, accĭdit, and other verbs of contingency, take a nom. and subjunctive, with or elegantly without *ut*.

[4] The verb usually agrees with the *nearest* nom., e. gr. "non omnis error *stultitia dicenda est*,"—not every error should be designated folly.

[5] The number of the Latin verb, after a noun of multitude, is very

4. Impersonalia nominatīvum non habent præcedentem: ut,	4. Impersonals have no nominative case before them: as,

Tædet me vitæ. Pertæsum est conjugii.

THE SECOND CONCORD

Between the Substantive and the Adjective, &c.

Adjectīva, participia, et pronomĭna, cum substantīvo, genĕre, numĕro, et casu, concordant: ut,	Adjectives, participles, and pronouns, agree with the words they qualify, in gender, number, and case: as,

Rara avis in terris, nigróque simillĭma cygno.[6]—Juv.

Aliquando oratio supplet locum substantīvi, adjectīvo in neutro genĕre posĭto: ut,	Sometimes a sentence supplies the place of a substantive, the adjective being in the neuter gender: as,

Audĭto regem Doroberniam proficisci.[7]

---

frequently regulated, as in our own language, by the notion of unity or plurality conveyed in the nom. case or subject. A plural verb, however, with a collective noun singular is very rarely to be found either in Cicero, or in Livy. A most striking instance of this construction occurs in Virgil — which consult, Æn. I, lin, 147—152, where "sævit" refers to the people collectively, as *one* body; while the verbs "conspexĕre," "silent," "adstant," refer to the same subject "vulgus," but to one and all of the people, *individually*.

[6] *a*. The gender of the adjective or participle is often determined (*per synĕsim*) by the sense, instead of the grammatical rule; e. gr. "*is* scelus," for scelestus homo. Magna pars *cæsi* sunt. *Triste* lupus stabŭlis, i. e. *animal*, the wolf is an animal sad to the folds. *b*. Adjectives are sometimes used in the sense of adverbs, e. gr. *nullus*, for omnĭnŏ non,—"qui nullus est," who does not exist. *c*. In a similar manner, primus (princeps), prior, solus, unus, ultĭmus, seem to be used for *primum*, etc. in prose writers; "*Priōri* Remo augurium vĕnit," the omen appeared first to Remus: but *primus* and *primùm* cannot be substituted for each other,—"primus venit," meaning he *was the first who* came; "primum venit," he came *first*.

[7] "Audĭto" is, in this example, a participle in the abl. case, supplying alone the place of the whole construction of the abl. absolute, the words "regem Doroberniam proficisci," being considered as a noun of the neuter gender, and the subject of the participle "audĭto." This usage is confined to a few participles — *audĭto, cognĭto, comperto* (passive,) *explorāto, desperāto, nunciāto, edicto*.

THE THIRD CONCORD

Between the Relative and its Antecedent.

Relatīvum cum antecedente concordat, genĕre, numĕro, et persōnâ: ut,	The relative agrees with its antecedent, in gender, number, and person: as,

——— *Vir bonus est quis?*
Qui consulta patrum, qui leges júraque servat.[8]—Hor.

Aliquando oratio ponĭtur pro antecedente: ut,	Sometimes a sentence is put for the antecedent: as,

In tempŏre ad eam veni, quod rerum omnium est primum.—Ter.

Relatīvum inter duo substantīva diversōrum genĕrum, et numerōrum collocātum, interdum cum posteriōre concordat: ut,	A relative, placed between two substantives of different genders and numbers, sometimes agrees with the latter: as,

Homĭnes tuentur illum globum, quæ terra dicĭtur.[9]—Cic.

Aliquando relatīvum concordat cum primitīvo, quod in possessīvo subaudītur: ut,	Sometimes a relative agrees with the primitive, which is understood in the possessive: as,

——— *Omnes omnia*
Bona dicĕre, et laudāre fortūnas meas[10]
Qui gnatum habĕrem tali ingenio prædĭtum.—Ter.

---

[8] *a.* The relative, which is frequently omitted in English, should always be expressed in Latin: "the books, you see, are my brother's," libri, *quos* vides, sunt fratris. *b.* Sometimes the relative agrees with its antecedent in sense, e. gr. "in favōrem nobilitātis, *quorum*:" and it is occasionally, as in Greek, attracted into the case of its antecedent, "cum aliquid agas *eōrum*, *quorum* consuêsti," i. e. *quæ*. *c.* For emphasis, or perspicuity, the antecedent is sometimes, though rarely, repeated in the relative clause, particularly in Cæsar; "Helvetii diem dicunt, *quâ die* omnes conveniant." This appears to have been the style of legal documents—"causas, quibus de *causis*." *d.* The relative sometimes takes an adjective after it, which properly belongs to the antecedent: "Alvus calōre *quem multum* habet omnia confĭcit," i. e. *multo calōre*—the stomach digests all things by the abundant warmth which it has. Hence may be explained the use of the relative in such phrases as the following, which are peculiar but very elegant; "*quæ* tua est prudentia," *such* is your prudence—"qui illĭus in te amor fuit."

[9] Cicero commonly makes the relative agree with the noun following; which also is the usual practice of other writers when the latter substantive is a proper name; e. gr. "Est locus in carcĕre, *quod Tullĭanum* appellātur."

[10] "Fortūnas meas," my fortune, i. e. *fortūnas mei*, qui habĕrem, etc., the fortune of me, who had a son: in the possessive pronoun "meas" is implied the primitive *mei*, which is the intended antecedent to the relative "*qui*."

Si nominatīvus relatīvo et verbo interponātur, relatīvum regĭtur à verbo, aut ab aliâ dictiōne quæ cum verbo in oratiōne locātur: ut,

If a nominative comes between the relative and the verb, the relative is governed by the verb, or by some other word, in the relative clause: as,

Gratia ab officio, quod mora tardat abest.—Ovid.
Cujus numen adōro.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF NOUNS.

I. Substantives.

Quum duo substantīva diversæ significatiōnis concurrunt, posterius in genitīvo ponĭtur: ut,

When two substantives of a different signification meet together, the latter is put in the genitive case: as,

Crescit amor nummi, quantùm ipsa pecunia crescit.[11]—Juv.

---

[11] The gen. case is that form of the noun by which is expressed the relation of *origin*, *source*, *ownership*, or *possessor*: "amor nummi," the love of money — the *root* or *cause*; "Cicerōnis opĕra," the works of Cicero—the source or *author*; "hominum facta," the actions of, or proceeding from, men, — the *possessors*. To reduce such constructions as "dies dolōris," a day of grief, and "liquĭdi urna," a pitcher of water, to the principle of the gen., the word *plenus* may be supplied; e. gr. "auri navis," a ship laden with gold,—gold being the source of its fulness; i. e. navis auri *plena*.

a. *Of*, with a substantive after it, denoting (not a different thing, but) a mere quality of the preceding noun, must always be latinised by an adjective: e. gr. a citizen *of Rome*, "civis Romānus," not civis Romæ; the praise *of others*, "laus aliēna;" a man *of prudence*, "vir prudens," not vir prudentiæ: "sententia regālis," the sentiment (worthy) of a king—"sententia *regis*" signifies, that the sentiment, whether worthy or unworthy of the royal character, did actually *originate* with the king. *b.* Hence the following expressions: "Miltiădes Atheniensis," Miltiades *of Athens*: "Thomas Tunbrigiensis," Thomas *of Tunbridge*: William, king *of England*, "Gulielmus, rex Anglicānus," or, (the name of the *people* for the name of the place), "rex Anglōrum." *c.* *Of gold*, *of silver*, *of wood*, *of iron*, &c., are made Latin by adjectives, as "trappings of silver," *phalĕræ argenteæ*: but more frequently, perhaps, by the prepositions *de*, *è*, *ex*, as "clypeus *ex* auro," a buckler of gold. The poets employ the gen. *d.* *Of mine*, *of thine*, *of ours*, &c., are translated by the adjective pronouns *meus*, *etc.*, e. gr. this friend of mine, "hic *meus* amicus." *e.* Analogous to this, is the use of the words *medius* the middle of, *summus* the summit of, *imus* the bottom of, *reliquus* the rest of, *ultĭmus*, *interior*, &c., which most frequently agree with the substantive following: e. gr. "summus mons," the top of the hill: "ad primam aurōram," (not at the first dawn, but) at the beginning of dawn; "reliquus sermo," the rest of the discourse; "ab ima mari,"

Hic genitīvus aliquandō in ivum vertitur: ut,

This genitive is sometimes changed into a dative: as,

Urbi pater est, urbique marītus.[12]—Luc.

Adjectīvum in neutro genĕre, e substantīvo posītum, aliquando genitīvum postŭlat:

An adjective of the neuter gender, put without a substantive, requires sometimes a genitive: as,

Paulŭlum pecuniæ.[13]

Ponĭtur interdum genitīvus tum, priōre substantīvo per ipsum subaudīto: ut,

Sometimes a genitive case is set alone, the former substantive being understood: as,

Ubi ad Diānæ venĕris, ito ad dextram: subaudi *templum.*

Duo substantīva rei ejusdem in eōdem casu ponuntur:

Two substantives, respecting the same thing, are put in the same case: as,

Effodiuntur opes irritamenta malōrum.[14]

The latter substantive may always be a dative, when the relation implied is acquisition: "præsidium reis," a protection *(acquired)* for the accused; "consilium aliis," advice *for* others—intended and given for their benefit: "consilium *aliōrum*" means, that the advice proceeds *from* them, without intimating *for* whom it was obtained.

a. The neuter adjectives, here referred to, are in every respect partitives of *quantity*, or adjectives virtually become substantives: they denote a part of one whole quantity, in contradistinction to the nouns (termed partitīva,—Nouns partitive,) which express one whole or more than one greater number. They are, *tantum* (so much), *quantum* (how much), *quantulum, multum, plus, minus, minimum;* also *quid,* and its compounds *numquid, aliquid,* etc.; *hoc, illud, id.* "Quid *rei* est?" what is the matter? "Id *negotii,*" this affair. *b.* The gen. is occasionally a neuter adjective in *um,* e. gr. "quid rei quī;" "quiddam novi:" but we do not say *aliquid utĭlis,* nor *quiddam memorabĭlis, but* "aliquid utile quiddam memorabile;" except in conjunction with an adjective in *um,* as "quid *novi* ac *memorabĭlis.*" *b.* Plural neuter adjectives are followed by the gen. on the same principle; "prima virōrum," for *primi viri,* the first men; strata viārum.

This addition to a substantive is named *Apposition. a.* The annexed noun will, if possible, take the same gender and number as the preceding substantive, thus "pecunia *domĭna* mundi,"—not domĭnus: and when an adjective or a verb follows, each ought to agree with the *leading* noun; "delicĭæ verò tuæ, noster *Æsōpus, talis fuit.*" *b.* The annexed noun, when a proper name, occasionally takes the gen. in prose, e. gr. "in Arethūsæ," "in oppĭdo Antiochĭæ:" in like manner, in expressions made English by a compound term, one of them is often latinised into the gen.—as, a *palm-tree,* a *fir-tree,* "arbor palmæ," "arbor abiĕtis;" *janua,* the *garden-gate;* an *earthquake,* "terræ motus."

Laus, vituperium, vel *qualitas* rei, ponitur in ablativo, etiam genitivo: ut,

Praise, dispraise, or the *quality* of a thing, is put in the ablative, and also the genitive case: as,

Ingenui vultûs puer, ingenuique pudōris.—Juv.
Vir nullâ fide.[15]

Opus et *usus* ablativum exĭgunt: ut,

Opus and *usus* (need) require an ablative case: as,

Auctoritāte tuâ nobis opus est.
Pecuniam, quâ nihil sibi esset usus, ab iis non accēpit.—Gell.

Opus autem adjectivè, pro *necessarius*, quandōque poni vidētur: ut,

Opus appears sometimes to be put adjectively for *necessarius*: as,

Dux nobis et auctor opus est.—Cic.

II. Adjectives.

1. *The Genitive Case after the Adjective.*

Adjectīva, quæ desiderium, notitiam, memoriam, timōrem, significant, atque iis contraria, genitīvum exĭgunt: ut,

Adjectives, which signify desire, knowledge, memory, fear, and the contraries, require a genitive case: as,

Est natūra hominum novitātis avĭda.—Plin.
Mens futūri præscia.
Memor esto brevis ævi. Immĕmor beneficii.
Imperītus rerum. Rudis belli.
Timĭdus Deōrum.—Ovid. *Impavĭdus sui.*[16]—Claud.

---

c. One of these substantives has sometimes, by association, the meaning of an adjective, especially with the poets; "regĭna sacerdos," the queen-priestess, the royal priestess; "populum latè regem," a people widely sovereign; "bellātor deus," the warrior-god.

[15] *a.* The gen. or the abl. of the *quality*, as this construction is called, is only employed when the latter substantive has an adjective in concord with it, and even then perhaps not without some regard to the principles contained in the use of these cases. They both express the origin or the source of some distinction of rank, character, &c.; but the abl. superadds the notion of concomitancy, e. gr. "mulier summâ prudentiâ," a woman *accompanied* with the greatest prudence: "es bono animo," be of good cheer, let good cheer *be with* you. Cicero has, in one and the same sentence, "summâ spe, summæ virtūtis,"—a man *accompanied* with the highest hope, and *distinguished* by the highest virtue. *b.* The gen. case thus convertible, if we may so speak, into the abl., ever implies some quality or attribute involved (in the concrete) in the governing noun—a remark which should guard the junior scholar from confounding this rule with *Quum duo substantīva,—When two substantives.*

[16] The gen. case after the adjective is explained on precisely the same principle as the genitive after any other declined part of speech, as de-

With many other adjectives, which express a passion or affection of the mind.

Adjectīva verbalia in *ax* etiam genitīvum exĭgunt: ut,	Verbal adjectives in *ax* require a genitive case: as,

Audax ingenii. Tempus edax rerum.

Nomĭna partitīva, numeralia, comparatīva et superlatīva, et quædam adjectīva partitīvè posĭta, genitīvum, à quo et genus mutuantur, exĭgunt: ut,	Partitives, numerals, comparatīves and superlatives, and some adjectives put partitively, require a genitive case, from which also they take their gender: as,

Utrum horum mavis accĭpe.
Primus regum Romanōrum fuit Romŭlus.
Manuum fortior est dextra.
Digitōrum medius est longissĭmus.
Sequĭmur te, sancte deōrum! [17]

Usurpantur autem et cum his præpositionĭbus, *à, ab, de, è, ex, inter, ante:* ut,	But they are varied also by these prepositions, *à, ab, de, è, ex, inter, ante:* as,

Tertius ab Ænēā. Solus de supĕris.
Deus è vobis alter es.—OVID.
Primus inter omnes. Primus ante omnes.

Secundus aliquando datīvum exĭgit: ut,	*Secundus* sometimes requires a dative case; as,

Haud ulli vetĕrum virtūte secundus.—VIRG.

---

noting, in this instance, the *origin* or *cause* of the qualities which the adjective denotes: thus, "novitātis avĭda," fond of novelty—novelty being the *source* whence the fondness arises; "impĭger militiæ," active in war—from being engaged in war, one becomes active; "timĭdus Deōrum," fearful of the Gods—the Gods *occasioning* one's fear; "patiens solis," from being inured to the sun, one is thereby capable of bearing it.

[17] *a.* By *Nomĭna partitīva,—Partitives, &c.*, are strictly understood, as the examples to the rule point out, partitives of *number*, or numeral and pronominal adjectives, which are used to signify one individual person or thing, or more, of a greater number of individuals. Some grammarians, mistaking such words as *primus, medius, etc.*, for partitives of this kind, have mentioned them as exceptive to this rule; whereas it seems more proper to refer them, as Zumpt has done, to a peculiar usage of the preposition *of*. (See *Note* 11, *e.* Syntax.) *b.* Comparatives, taken partitively, are admissible only when two persons or things of the same class are considered, as "manuum fortior," the stronger (hand) of the (two) hands. *c.* The poets extend this construction of the partitives of number to other adjectives; prose writers rarely; "dilecti equĭtum," "expediti militum," are common in Livy; "effœtæ parentum," Sallust.

Interrogativum, et ejus redditīvum, ejusdem casūs et tempŏris erunt, nisi voces variæ constructiōnis adhibeantur: ut,

An interrogative, and the word which answers it, shall be of the same case and tense, except words of a different construction be used: as,

Quarum rerum nulla est satiĕtas? Divitiārum.
Furtīne accūsas, an homicidii? Utrōque.

2. *The Dative Case after the Adjective.*

Adjectīva, quibus commŏdum, incommŏdum, similitūdo, dissimilitūdo, voluptas, submissio, aut relatio ad alĭquid significātur, datīvum postŭlant: ut,

Adjectives which signify advantage, disadvantage, likeness, unlikeness, pleasure, submission, or relation *to* a thing, require a dative case: as,

Si facis ut patriæ sit idoneus, utĭlis agris.—Juv.
Turba gravis paci, placĭdæque inimīca quiēti.—Mart.
Patri simĭlis.—Cic.
Qui color albus erat, nunc est contrarius albo.—Ovid.
Jucundus amīcis. Mart.
Omnĭbus supplex. Est finitĭmus oratōri poëta.[18]

Huc referuntur nomĭna ex *con* prepositiōne compositĭa: ut, *contubernālis, commilĭto, conservus, cognātus.*

Here are referred nouns compounded of the proposition *con*: as, *contubernālis, commilĭto, conservus, cognātus.*

Quædam ex his quæ similitudĭnem significant, etiam genitīvo junguntur: ut,

Some of these adjectives, which signify likeness, are joined also to a genitive case: as,

Quem metuis par hujus erat. Domĭni simĭlis es.[19]

---

[18] *a.* Every adjective, comprehended under this rule, expresses a quality, and the dat., a person or thing to which that quality belongs, as an *acquisition*, or in which it terminates. In the use of the dat., let it be remembered, that the attention is directed *forward* to some object or end, as in the use of the gen. it is drawn *backward* to the cause or ownership: "patri simĭlis," like to his father—his father being the object in whom the likeness is made to terminate; "idoneus patriæ," serviceable to his country—his country being the object to which he is serviceable. *b.* The construction of *idem* with a dative is poetical, and a Greek imitation, e. gr. "invĭtum qui servat, *idem* facit *occidenti*," Hor.—he, who preserves one against his will, does the same as he who kills him; in prose, its proper application is with *qui, ac* (atque); "iidem *qui* ac *demĭci*;" "animus te ergà *idem* est *ac fuit*." *c. Conscius* takes a dat. of the person, and a gen. of the thing, as "mens *sibi* conscia *recti*."

Commūnis, aliēnus, immūnis, genitīvo, dativo, et ablativo cum præpositiōne junguntur: ut,

Commūnis, aliēnus, immūnis, are joined to a genitive, a dative, or an ablative with a preposition, as,

Commūne animantium omnium est.—Cic.
Mors omnibus est commūnis.—Ibid.
Hoc mihi tecum commūne est.
Non aliēna consilii.—Sall. *Aliēnus ambitiōni.*—Sen. Præf.
Non aliēnus à Sœvŏlæ studiis.—Cic.
Vobis immūnibus hujus esse mali dabĭtur.—Ovid.
Caprificus omnĭbus immūnis est.—Plin.
Immūnes ab illis malis sumus.[20]

Natus, commŏdus, incommŏdus, utĭlis, inutĭlis, vehĕmens, aptus, cum multis aliis, interdum etiam accusatīvo cum præpositiōne junguntur: ut,

Natus, commŏdus, incommŏdus, utĭlis, inutĭlis, vehĕmens, aptus, with many others, are sometimes also joined to an accusative with a preposition: as,

Natus ad gloriam.—Cic. *Utĭlis ad eam rem.*[21]

Verbalia in *bilis* accepta passīvè, et participialia in *dus*, datīvum postŭlant: ut,

Verbal adjectives in *bilis* taken passively, and participials in *dus*, require a dative case: as,

Nulli penetrabĭlis astro lucus iners.—Stat.
O mihi post nullos Juli memorande sodāles!—Mart.

---

[19] *a.* To express one like, i. e. equal to me, to him, &c., *similis* always takes a genitive; *mei, tui, sui, vestri—similis*. *b.* Likewise *proprium* very frequently governs the gen., especially when it denotes a property or peculiarity: "est oratōris proprium—proprium boni."

[20] These adjectives do not indiscriminately govern the different cases assigned to them; but a constant reference must be made to the relation intended as well as to good classical authority: thus, in the third example, concomitancy is at once manifest in the abl. "tecum," *with* you; in the second instance, "omnĭbus" is in the dat., as shewing the objects in whom death *terminates*, or the objects who *acquire* death; and in the first, *omnĭbus animantĭbus* would be a harsh substitute for "animantium omnium."

[21] *a.* When the words following these adjectives represent a person, a dative should be used, e. gr. "utilis hominĭbus," not ad homĭnes,—useful to men. But adjectives in which *motion* is implied, or which signify *inclination, fitness*, or *readiness*, preferably take the preposition *ad* with an acc. (and sometimes *erga* or *adversus*). *b. Natus*, denoting *years old*, takes an acc., *annos* triginta natus, thirty years old.

3. *The Accusative Case after the Adjective.*

Magnitudĭnis mensūra subjicĭtur adjectīvo in accusatīvo, ablatīvo, et genitīvo: ut,

The measure of quantity is put after adjectives in the accusative, the ablative, and the genitive case: as,

Turris centum pedes alta.
Fons latus pedĭbus tribus, altus triginta.
— Area lata pedum denûm.[22]

Accusatīvus aliquando subjicĭtur adjectīvis et participiis, ubi præpositio *secundùm* vidētur subintellĭgi: ut,

An accusative case is sometimes put after adjectives and participles, where the preposition *secundùm* seems to be implied: as,

Os humĕrósque Deo similis. Vultum demissus.[23]

4. *The Ablative Case after the Adjective.*

Adjectīva, quæ ad copĭam, egestātémve pertĭnent, interdum ablatīvum, interdum genitīvum exĭgunt: ut,

Adjectives which relate to plenty, or want, require sometimes an ablative, sometimes a genitive case: as,

Dives equûm, dives pictāi vestis et auri.—VIRG.
Amor et melle et felle est fœcundissĭmus.—PLAUT.
Expers fraudis. Gratiâ beātus.[24]

---

[22] To express the measure of any thing, whether in inches, feet, miles, &c., the adjective most commonly takes the acc. case. The abl. except in later writers, is seldom used: and the gen. seems admissible only in plural substantives, and then very rarely indeed, or when the adjective of dimension is omitted; *fossăm pedum viginti,—vallum duodēnûm pedum.* Cæs.

[23] *a.* This is called the *Greek Accusative;* but since neither "secundùm," nor any word of similar import, is ever expressed, it would be improper to introduce it in Latin composition. *b.* To this rule seems to belong the formula "magnam partem, maxĭmam partem," e. gr. *maxĭmam partem* lacte vivunt, they live for the most part on milk. Likewise "id genus," of that kind, is used for *ejus generis.* *c.* All phrases of this nature which contain a verb or passive participle may be thus translated;—"caput nectentur," *they have the head bound;* "unum exūta pedem," *having one foot bare.*

[24] *a.* The relations of the genitive being expressed by the prepositions *à, ab, de, è, ex,* that case is found, in almost all its constructions, to be in some degree varied by the ablative. A knowledge of this fact is of the highest importance; and that the student may attend to it, he is directed to reflect upon and compare the rules of which we give the leading words: Laus, vituperium, The praise, dispraise;—Nomĭna partitīva, Partitives; numerals, and the following rule;—Adjectīva quæ ad copĭam, Adjectives which relate to plenty;—Dignus, indignus, and the rule after it;—

Adjectīva et substantīva aguntablatīvum significantem causam ei formam, vel modum rei: ut,

Adjectives and substantives govern an ablative case signifying the cause and the form, or the manner of a thing: as,

Pallĭdus īrā. Nomĭne grammatĭcus, re barbărus.
Trojānus origĭne Cæsar.—VIRG.

Dignus, indignus, prædĭtus, captus, contentus, extorris, fretus, liber, cum adjectivis *prĕtium* significantĭbus, ablativum exigunt: ut,

Dignus, indignus, prædĭtus, captus, contentus, extorris, fretus, liber, with adjectives signifying *price*, require an ablative case: as,

Dignus es odio.—TER.
Qui gnatum habĕrem tali ingenio prædĭtum.—IBID.
Ocŭlis capti fodĕre cubilia talpæ.—VIRG.
Sorte tuâ contentus abi.
Terrōre liber anĭmus.—LIV. *Gemmis venāle nec auro.*

Horum nonnulla interdum genitīvum admittunt: ut,

Some of these admit sometimes a genitive case: as,

Magnōrum indignus avōrum.—VIRG.
Carmĭna digna deæ. Extorris regni.—STAT.

Comparatīva, cùm exponantur per *quàm*, ablatīvum admittunt: ut,

Comparatives, when they may be explained by *quàm* (than), receive an ablative case: as,

Vilius argentum est auro, virtutĭbus aurum:[25] id est,
Quàm aurum, quàm virtūtes.—HOR.

Verba accusandi, Verbs of accusing, and the succeeding rule;—Quibusdam verbis subjicĭtur, A noun of price is put after some verbs, and the next five Rules, with *Note* 35, *c*, Syntax;—Verbis quibusdam addĭtur ablatīvus, To some verbs is added an ablative, and the rule following. *b*. The preposition which sometimes occurs after adjectives of plenty and want is *a*, or *ab*, (sometimes *è* or *ex*,) as *fertĭlis frugum, à frugĭbus*, productive of fruits—the gen. case and the preposition alike denoting the *origin* of the productiveness.

[25] *a*. The comparative, without *quàm* and its dependent case, is sometimes, though rarely, used in the sense of the superlative; "tristior," more sad than usual, i. e. very sad; "candidior barba cadēbat," his beard fell whiter than before, or very white. *b*. The comparative is sometimes followed by *quàm pro*, as, he wears a garment too large for his body, "majōrem gerit vestem, *quàm pro habĭtu* corpŏris." Such an expression as nimis magnam vestem pro corpŏre suo, would be wholly unclassical. *c*. A noun in the abl. often follows a comparative by a different construction, as "corpŏre validior," "animo fortior," stronger *in* body, braver *in* mind.

Tanto, *quanto*, *hoc*, *eo*, et *quo*, cum quibusdam aliis quæ mensūram excessûs signifĭcant, item *ætāte* et *natu*, comparatīvis et superlatīvis sæpè junguntur: ut,

Tanto, *quanto*, *hoc*, *eo*, and *quo*, with some others which signify the measure of exceeding, also *ætāte* and *natu*, are often joined to comparatives and superlatives: as,

Tanto pessĭmus omnium poēta,
Quanto tu optĭmus omnium patrōnus.—CATULL.
Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt.[26]
Major et maxĭmus ætāte. Major et maxĭmus natu.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PRONOUNS.

Mei, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, *vestri*, genitīvi primitivōrum, ponuntur cùm persōna significātur: ut,

Mei, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, *vestri*, the genitive cases of their primitives, are used when a person is signified: as,

Languet desiderio tui.
Parsque tui lateat corpŏre clausa meo. Imāgo nostri.

Meus, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, ponuntur cùm actio vel possessio rei significātur: ut,

Meus, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, are used when action or the possession of a thing is signified: as,

Favet desiderio tuo.[27]
Imāgo nostra: id est, *quam nos possidēmus.*

Hæc possessīva, *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, et *vester*, hos genitīvos post se recipiunt; *ipsĭus*, *solĭus*, *unĭus*, *duōrum*, *trium*, *etc. omnium*, *plurium*, *paucōrum*, *cujúsque*; et genitīvos participiōrum, qui ad primitīvum subaudītum referuntur: ut,

These possessives, *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, and *vester*, take after them these genitives; *ipsĭus*, *solĭus*, *unĭus*, *duōrum*, *trium*, *etc. omnium*, *plurium*, *paucōrum*, *cujúsque*; and also the genitive cases of participles, which are referred to the primitive word understood: as,

---

[26] The definite article before a comparative is rendered by *eo*; as, *the better*, "eo melior," i. e. better by that; and correlatively, or in relation to some other adjective, by *quo* and *eo—the wiser, the better*, "quo sapientior, eo melior," i. e. by what the wiser, by that the better.

[27] Instead of the possessive pronoun, the dat. of the personal is frequently used, and with great elegance, but by the poets chiefly; as "mihi in manum tradĭdit," for *meam in manum*—he delivered it into my hand: so in the very common phrase, "mihi in mentem vēnit," it occurred to me."

Dixi meâ unĭus opĕrâ rempublĭcam esse salvam.—Cic.
Meum solĭus peccātum corrĭgi non potest.—Ibid.
——Cùm mea nemo
Scripta legat vulgò recitāre timentis.—Hor.
De tuo ipsĭus studĭo conjectūram cepĕris.—Cic.
In suâ cujusque laude præstantior.
Nostrâ omnium memoriâ.
Vestris paucōrum respondet laudĭbus.—Cic.

Sui et *suus* reciprŏca sunt; hoc est, semper reflectuntur ad id quod præcipuum in sententiâ præcessit: ut,

Sui and *suus* are reciprocals; that is, they always relate to that which went before most to be noted in the sentence: as,

Petrus nimiùm admirātur se. Parcit errorĭbus suis.[28]
Magnopĕrè Petrus rogat, ne sedesĕras.

Hæc demonstratīva, *hic*, *iste*, *ille*, sic distinguuntur: *hic* mihi proxĭmum demonstrat; *iste* eum, qui apud te est; *ille* eum, qui ab utrōque remōtus est.[29]

These demonstratives, *hic*, *iste*, *ille*, are thus distinguished; *hic* points to the nearest to me; *iste* to him who is by you; *ille* to him, who is at a distance from both of us.[29]

Hic et *ille*, cùm ad duo anteposĭta referuntur, *hic* plerumque ad posterius, *ille* ad prius refertur: ut,

When *hic* and *ille* are referred to two things or persons going before, *hic* generally is referred to the latter, *ille* to the former: as,

Quocunque aspicias, nihil est nisi pontus et aër;
Nubĭbus hic tumĭdus, fluctĭbus ille minax.[30]

---

[28] *a. Sui* means *self*, and always refers "ad quod præcipuum," to the principal or leading subject: but where ambiguity is likely to arise from the similarity of its numbers, this may be avoided by using the pronoun *ipse*; "Jugurtha legātos misit, qui *ipsi* libĕrisque vitam petĕrent," *for himself* and children. *b. Ipse* is applicable to all the persons *ego ipse*, *tu ipse*, *ille ipse*, and answers to the English words *very*, *self*, *own*: it means *self*, in opposition to some one or other expressed or implied; e. gr. "Cato se *ipse* occĭdit," Cato himself (and no one else) slew himself—where the reciprocal power of *se* is also evident, by its being the object of the verb, and denoting the same person as the subject, Cato.

[29] The demonstrative pronoun "that" applied in an indifferent sense, as a mark of blame, contempt, irony, is commonly translated by *iste*: "*that* prating fellow," *garrŭlus iste*; "drive away *that* paltry rival," *istum æmŭlum pellĭto*. Otherwise *ille* should be used, as "Alexander the Great," *Alexander ille magnus*. Cicero has "*illum* nebulōnem," that rascally fellow, where the intention of the writer is sufficiently marked by the word *nebulōnem*, without recourse to *iste*.

[30] *Hic* is opposed to *ille*, as *this*, the former, or first mentioned, is to *that*, the latter, or last mentioned; and although the rule respecting the

THE CONSTRUCTION OF VERBS.

I. *The Nominative Case after the Verb.*

Verba substantīva, ut *sum, forem, fio, existo;* verba vocandi passīva, ut *nomĭnor, appellor, dicor, vocor, nuncŭpor*, et iis similia, ut *videor, habeor, existĭmor*, utrinque eosdem casus habent: ut,

Verbs substantives, as *sum, forem, fio, existo;* verbs passive of calling, as *nomĭnor, appellor, dicor, vocor, nuncŭpor;* and the like to them, as *videor, habeor, existĭmor*, have the same cases after them, as before: as,

Deus est summum bonum. Perpusilli vocantur nani.
Fides religiōnis nostræ fundamentum habētur.
Natūra beātis omnibus esse dedit.[31]—CLAUD.

Item omnia ferè verba post se adjectīvum admittunt, quod cum nominatīvo verbi casu, genĕre, et numĕro concordat: ut,

Almost all verbs admit after them an adjective, which agrees with the nominative case of the verb in case, gender, and number: as

Pii orant taciti. Malus pastor dormit supīnus.

II. *The Genitive Case after the Verb.*

Sum genitīvum postŭlat, quoties significat possessiōnem, officium, signum, aut id quod ad rem quampiam pertĭnet: ut,

Sum requires a genitive case, as often as it implies *possession, duty, sign*, or that which has respect to any thing: as,

---

use of these words together is frequently violated, even by the best prose writers, yet the application of it is so conducive to perspicuity as to deserve to be uniformly attended to. For further complete information on the subject of the Pronouns, read Zumpt's analysis of them, Section LXVII.

[31] *a.* The reason of these verbs having the same case after them as before, is, that the noun following forms part of the predicate, or thing affirmed of the subject; thus "summum bonum" forms, with "est," the predicate of "Deus"—God *is the chief good*. *b.* There are other verbs, however, *(do, addo, adjungo, adscrībo, accio, peto, sumo,)* that take a substantive after them, as an apposition to the subject, and in the same case; e. gr. "*servus* puĕro *comes* adjungĭtur," *as* or *for a* companion. *c.* Verbs of declaring, thinking, &c., are used in English either personally or impersonally, as *Atticus is said* to have been, or, *it is said* that Atticus was: but in Latin, the personal construction is by far the more common, especially with *videor*. *Atticus vidētur* (dicĭtur, putātur, tradĭtur, creditur, negātur, etc.) fuisse.

Pecus est Melibœi.
Adolescentis est majōres natu revereri.[32]—Cic.

Excipiuntur hi nominatīvi, *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum, humānum, belluīnum*, et similia: ut,

Except these nominatives *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum, humānum, belluīnum*, and the like: as,

Non est meum contra auctoritātem senātūs dicĕre.—Cic.
Humānum est irasci.

Verba accusandi, damnandi, nonendi, absolvendi, et simia, genitīvum postŭlant, qui rimen significant: ut,

Verbs of accusing, condemning, warning, acquitting, and the like, require a genitive case, which signifies the charge: as,

Qui altĕrum accūsat probri, eum ipsum se intuēri oportet.
Scelĕris condemnat genĕrum suum.—Cic.
Admonēto illum pristĭnæ fortūnæ.[33] *Furti absolūtus est.*

Vertĭtur hic genitīvus alinando in ablatīvum, vel cum præpositiōne, vel sine præpositiōne: ut,

This genitive is sometimes varied by an ablative, either with or without a preposition: as,

Putāvi eā de re te esse admonendum.—Cic.
Si in me iniquus es judex, condemnābo eōdem ego te crimĭne.—Ibid.

Uterque, nullus, alter, neuter, alius, ambo, et superlaivus gradus, non nisi in ablaivo id genus verbis jungunur: ut,

Uterque, nullus, alter, neuter, alius, ambo, and the superlative degree, are joined to verbs of that kind only in the ablative case: as,

---

[32] **a.** The relation of "possessio, officium, signum," is scarcely signified by the verb "sum," but is implied in the gen. following it, or in the two words together. Thus "Melibœi" *of itself* marks Melibœus as a possessor, and the object of possession is easily known by the proximity of Melibœi" to "pecus."—So with regard to other instances. But many writers suppose an ellipsis, as *est judĭcis*, i. e. *officium* vel *negotium* judĭcis: but the assumed word occurs so rarely, that it is of no practical importance whatever to make such phrases elliptical. They are founded on the general principle, that the gen. denotes the origin or source of things; and as what *proceeds from* any person, does, as it were, belong to it as a *possession, duty*, or the like, this relation after *sum* is not inaptly represented by the gen. alone (without the word said to be understood). *Fĭeri* is used in this way; "Asia *Romanōrum* facta est," Asia became the Romans'—fell under the dominion of the Romans.

[33] **But** verbs of *reminding*, as moneo, admoneo, take two accusatives with the neuter pronouns, e. gr. "Fabius *ea me* monet;" *quod me* monuit; *hoc te* admoneo.

Accūsas furti, an stupri? Utrōque, vel *de utrōque*: *Ambōbus*, vel *de ambōbus*: *neutro*, vel *de neutro*.
De plurimis simul accusāris.

Satāgo, miserēor, et *miserēsco*, genitīvum postŭlant: ut,

Satāgo, miserēor, and *miserēsco*, require a genitive case: as,

Is suārum rērum satāgit.—Ter. *Ore miserēre labōrum*
Tantōrum, miserēre animæ non digna ferentis.—Virg.
Et gentis miserēsce tuæ.—Stat.

Reminiscor, obliviscor, memĭni, recordor, genitīvum, aut accusatīvum, admittunt: ut,

Reminiscor, obliviscor, memĭni, recordor, admit a genitive, or an accusative case: as,

Date fidei reminiscitur.
Proprium est stultitiæ aliōrum vĭtia cernēre, oblivīsci suōrum.—Cic.
Facium ut hujus loci semper meminĕris.—Ter.
Hæc olim meminisse juvābit.—Virg.
Hujus meriti in me recordor. Si rītè audīta recordor.[24]

Potĭor, aut genitīvo, aut ablatīvo, jungĭtur: ut,

Potĭor is joined either to a genitive, or an ablative case: as,

Romāni signōrum et armōrum potīti sunt.—Sall.
Egressi optātā potiuntur Troës arēnā.[25]—Virgil.

---

[24] *a.* The Latins, in imitation of the Greeks, regarded the noun after reminiscor, obliviscor, memini, recordor, either as the source and object of the action signified by the verb, or simply as the immediate object of it: when the former was intended, the gen. was used, when the latter, the acc.: "date *fidei* reminiscitur."—the promise being made the cause of his remembering: *memĭnerunt Pandum*. *b.* The gen. after these verbs, and after misereor, miseresco, potior, fungor, utor, etc., is Englished without any sign, as if it were an acc., as "miserēre labōrum tantōrum," *pity so great distresses*. "fungor officĭis." *I discharge my duties*. *c.* "Mihi in mentem venire," to occur to me, commonly takes a gen., from its resemblance in sense to memini: e. gr. "venit mihi *Platōnis* in mentem." The nom., however, may be used. "*multa* mihi in mentem *venĭunt*." *d.* "Memini," *to make mention*, is generally followed by de.

[25] *a.* Among the old writers, *potior* governed an acc. of the object. *b.* Rex, when it denotes sovereignty or supremacy, is constantly joined to potior in the *gen. plural*, e. gr. "Sulla *rerum* potītus est," attained the supreme power. Cicero, we believe, uniformly employs the same construction with *regnum* and *civitas*. *c.* Several other verbs also admit a gen., like potior, after the Greek structure, as *ango*, *lætor*, *discrucior*, and other verbs expressing an *affection of the mind*; likewise *abstineo*, *desino*, *regno*, *desisto*, *adipiscor*, etc.

III. *The Dative Case after the Verb.*

Omnia verba regunt datīvum ejus rei, cui alĭquid acquirĭtur, aut adimĭtur; ut,

All verbs govern a dative of that *to* or *for* which any thing is acquired, or *from* which it is taken away: as,

Mihi istic nec serĭtur, nec metĭtur.—PLAUT.
Quis te mihi casus adēmit.[36]—OVID.

To this rule belong verbs of various kinds.

1. (Imprīmis,) verba significantia commŏdum, aut incommŏdum, regunt datīvum: ut,

1. Verbs signifying advantage, or disadvantage, govern a dative case: as,

Non potes mihi commodāre, nec incommodāre.

Ex his, *juvo*, *lædo*, *delecto*, et alia quædam, accusatīvum exĭgunt: ut,

Of these, *juvo*, *lædo*, *delecto*, and some others, require an accusative case: as,

Fessum quies plurĭmùm juvat.

2. Verba comparandi regunt datīvum: ut,

2. Verbs of comparing govern a dative case: as,

Sic parvis componĕre magna solēbam.—VIRG.

Interdum verò ablatīvum cum præpositiōne *cum*; interdum accusatīvum cum præpositionĭbus *ad* et *inter*: ut,

But sometimes an ablative with the preposition *cum*; sometimes an accusative with the prepositions *ad* and *inter*: as,

Compăro Virgilium cum Homĕro.
Si ad eum comparātur nihil est.
Hæc non sunt inter se conferenda.

---

[36] *a.* The most general notion conveyed by the dative after the verb is that of *acquisition*, or something done *to* or *for* a person or thing: thus, *est* with a dative denotes mere acquisition, as "est *mihi* pater," a father is to me, i. e. I *have* a father: "est homĭni," the man *has*. The advantage or disadvantage, the benefit, the loss or injury, (sometimes said to be specified by the dative alone,) is found out from its grammatical connexion with other words: "filius obtempĕrat *patri*," the son is obedient to his father—an *advantage*, or benefit, gained by the father; "pater autem nocet *filio*," but the father wrongs his son,—a *disadvantage*, or injury, to the son. *b.* Transitive verbs take an acc. of the immediate object, and a dat. of the remote object, e. gr. "hoc tibi dabo," I will give this to you: but intransitives take a dative only, as *faveo*, *studeo*, *medeor* and *medicor*, *nubo*, *ignosco*, *parco*, *indulgeo*, *etc.*; "nemo *tibi* credit," nobody believes

3. Verba dandi, et reddendi, regunt datīvum : ut,

3. Verbs of giving, and restoring, govern a dative case : as,

Fortūna multis dat nimis, satis nulli.[37]—MART.
Ingrātus est, qui gratiam benè merenti non repōnit.

4. Verba promittendi, ac solvendi, regunt datīvum : ut,

4. Verbs of promising, and of paying, govern a dative case : as,

Quæ tibi promitto ac recipio sanctissimè esse observatūrum. Æs aliēnum mihi numerāvit.—CIC.

5. Verba imperandi, et nuntiandi, regunt datīvum : ut,

5. Verbs of commanding, and of telling, govern a dative case : as,

Impĕrat, aut servit, collecta pecunia cuique.—HOR.
Quid de quoque viro, et cui dicas, sæpè vidēto.[38]—IB.

Excĭpe *rego*, *guberno*, quæ accusatīvum habent; *tempĕro* et *moděror*, quæ nunc datīvum, nunc accusatīvum habent : ut,

Except *rego* and *guberno*, which have an accusative case; *tempĕro* and *moděror*, which have sometimes a dative, sometimes an accusative : as,

Luna regit menses.—Orbem Deus ipse gubernat.
Tempĕrat ipse sibi.—Sol tempĕrat omnia luce.
Hic moderātur equos—qui non moderabĭtur iræ.[39]

6. Verba fidendi datīvum regunt : ut,

6. Verbs of trusting govern a dative case : as,

Vacuis committĕre venis nil nisi lene decet.—HOR.

7. Verba obsequendi, et repugnandi, datīvum regunt : ut,

7. Verbs of complying with, and opposing, govern a dative case : as,

Semper obtempĕrat pius filius patri.
Ignāvis precĭbus fortūna repugnat.

---

you; "res *mihi* placet," the matter pleases me. c. The same verb has sometimes a dat., and sometimes an acc., but in different senses: "caveo *tibi*," I am concerned for your safety,—*te, à te*, I am on my guard against you: "metuo, timeo *tibi*," I am alarmed on your account,—*te*, I fear you: "Consŭlo *tibi*," (prospicio, provideo,) I provide for your interest,—*te*, I ask your advice; "solvo *tibi*," I pay you,—*te*, I release you.

[37] Some of these, as *dono*, vary the construction of the dat.—thus, "donāre civitātem *alĭcui*," or "alĭquem donāre *civitāte*."

[38] "Loquor," to speak *to*, is followed by *ad* and an acc., as "*ad quem* sic ore locūta est:" to speak *with*, or discourse, by *cum* and an abl., as *cum illo* locūtus sum."

[39] "Tempĕror" and "moděror," with a dat., signify to *set bounds to*; *with an acc.*, to *regulate*, or *arrange*.

8. Verba mĭnandi, ĕt irascendi, regunt datīvum : ut,

8. Verbs of threatening, and of being angry, govern a dative case : as,

Utrīque mortem est minitātus.[40]—Cic.
Adolescenti nihil est quòd succenseam.—Ter.

9. *Sum*, cum compositis, præter *possum*, regit datīvum : ut,

Sum, with its compounds, except *possum*, governs a dative : as,

Rex pius est reipublĭcæ ornamentum.
Mihi nec obest, nec prodest.[41]

Datīvum fermè regunt verba composĭta cum his adverbiis, *benè*, *satis*, *malè* ; et cum his præpositionĭbus, *præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *post*, *ob*, *in*, *inter* : ut,

Verbs compounded with the adverbs *benè*, *satis*, *malè* ; and with these prepositions, *præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *post*, *ob*, *in*, *inter*, generally govern a dative case : as,

Dii tibi benefaciant. Ego meis majorĭbus virtūte præluxi.
Intempestivè qui occupāto adlusĕrit.—Phædr.
Condūcit hoc tuæ laudi. Convixit nobis.
Subŏlet jam uxōri, quod ego machĭnor.
Iniquissĭmam pacem justissĭmo bello antefĕro.—Cic.
Postpōno famæ pecuniam.
—Ea quoniam nemĭni obtrūdi potest,
Itur ad me.—Ter. *Impendet omnĭbus periculum.*
Non solùm interfuit his rebus, sed etiam præfuit.[42]—Cic.

Non pauca ex his mutant datīvum aliquoties in alium casum : ut,

Not a few of these sometimes change the dative into another case : as,

Præstat ingenio alius alium.—Quinct.

Est, pro *habeo*, regit datīvum: ut,

Est, for *habeo*, governs a dative : as,

Est mihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca.[43]—Virg.

---

[40] A difference of idiom may be suggested in regard to verbs of threatening ; we should commonly say, "he threatens all good men with crosses and torments," but the Latins more accurately wrote, "omnĭbus bonis cruces ac tormenta minitātur," Cic., he threatens crosses and torments *to all good men*,—the persons being the remoter objects, and therefore in the dat. in Latin.

[41] *Absum* is generally found with an abl. and a preposition, e. gr. "abest ab urbe."

[42] Our limits will not permit us to do justice to the extensive rule on compounded verbs : we recommend the pupil to study Scheller and Zumpt on this subject, to consult a good lexicon, and attend to the usages of the purest authors.

[43] That is, *est*, with a dat., signifies the same as *habeo*, to have. The

Huic simile est *suppĕtit*: ut,

In this way *suppĕtit* is used: as,

Pauper enim non est, cui rerum suppĕtit usus.—Hor.

Sum, cum multis aliis, geminum admittit datīvum: ut,

Sum, with many other verbs, admits a double dative case: as,

Exitio est avidis mare nautis,—Hor.
Speras tibi laudi fore, quod mihi vitio vertis?[44]

Est ubi hic datīvus, *tibi*, aut *sibi*, aut etiam *mihi*, elegantiæ causâ addĭtur:[45] ut,

Sometimes the datives *tibi*, *sibi*, *mihi*, are added for the sake of elegance:[45] as,

Suo sibi gladio hunc jugŭlo.—Ter.

IV. *The Accusative case after the Verb.*

Verba transitīva, cujuscunque genĕris, sive actīvi, sive deponentis, sive commūnis, exĭgunt accusatīvum: ut,

Verbs transitive, of whatever kind, whether active, deponent, or common, require an accusative case: as,

Percontatōrem fugĭto, nam garrŭlus idem est.—Hor.
Aper agros depopulātur. Imprīmis venerāre Deos.[46]

---

verb *sum* in this sense, when united to the gerund in *dum*, may always be rendered *have*, *must*, *should*, or *ought*, according to the notion of propriety, duty, or necessity to be conveyed: "orandum est mihi," I have, or ought, to pray; I must, or should pray.

[43] As *do*, *duco*, *fio*, *habeo*, *verto*, *mitto*, *relinquo*, *venio*. *a.* Anciently, the dat. and abl. senses (relations) were, in the singular as well as in the plural, expressed by the same ending. Hence, when the ending of the singular became different, their uses were sometimes confounded; thus, misit mihi *munĕri*, i. e. *munĕre*, he sent me it as a gift: (Latin Gram.) and the noun which was originally an abl., has, by an accidental corruption, come to be used in the dat. This account is highly probable; and the more so, since there is no trace of an identity of relation in the two nouns which form the double dat.: for "exitio" is equivalent to *as a (means of) destruction*; or "est exitio," *causes* destruction: "quod mihi *vitio* vertis," *as a fault*. On the other hand, the abl. is sometimes used for the dat., in an acquisitive sense, e. gr. "hæret pede pes"—*pede for pedi*. *b.* The phrase *mihi est nomen* is equivalent to "I am called," and the name itself may stand either in the nom., or in the dat. by attraction to the dat. of the person: "cui nomen *Arethūsa* est;" "cui nunc cognōmen *Iŭlo*."

[44] This dat., which is most usual in the comic poets, in speeches and confidential letters, can hardly be accounted pleonastic, or redundant, as it imparts great strength and beauty to the expression.

[45] *a.* The acc. case is that form of the noun which, in its most common construction, marks the proper and immediate object of the action signified by the verb: hence it is joined to all verbs of a transitive

Verba neutra accusatīvum habent cognātæ significationis: ut,

Verbs neuter have an accusative case of a like signification: as,

Duram servit servitūtem.

Sunt quæ figurātè accusatīvum habent: ut,

Some verbs have an accusative case, by a figure: as,

Nec vox hominem sonat: ô dea, certè![47]—VIRG.

Verba rogandi, docendi, vestiendi, celandi, ferè duplĭcem regunt accusatīvum: ut,

Verbs of asking, teaching, clothing, concealing, commonly govern two accusative cases: as,

Tu modò posce deos veniam.—VIRG.
Dedocēbo te istos mores.
Ridicŭlum est te istuc me admonēre.—TER.
Induit se calceos, quos priùs exuĕrat.
Ea ne me celet, consuefēci filium.[48]—TER.

Hujusmŏdi verba etiam in passīvâ voce accusatīvum post se habent: ut,

Verbs of this sort have after them an accusative case also in the passive voice: as,

Poscĕris exta bovis.

Nomĭna appellatīva adduntur ferè cum præpositiōne verbis, quæ denŏtant motum: ut,

Nouns appellative are commonly added, with a preposition to verbs which express motion: as,

Ad templum Pallădis ibant.

---

sense, whether active, as "*Percontatōrem* fugĭto;" or deponent, as "Aper *agros* depopulātur." *b.* It follows some passive verbs also, especially those of *teaching, asking, entreating,* and *inquiring;* e. gr. doceor *grammaticam,* rogātus *sententiam,* interrogātus *testimonium.* *c.* The case, in which the effect of an action is expressed, depends much upon the view with which a nation regards the relation between the verb and its object. This remark, made by the learned Matthiæ on the acc. case in Greek, is applicable also to the Latin and our own language: thus, the objects of *misereor, miseresco,* sometimes of *reminiscor, oblīviscor, potior,* are placed in the gen. case; of *ignosco, parco, indulgeo,* in the dat.; of *fungor, fruor, utor,* in the abl.; while the objects of the English words, which answer to them, as *pity, remember, spare, discharge, use, &c.,* take the acc. or objective case.

[47] This acc. is rather a Greek imitation than a figurative structure, analogous to the construction of "Os humĕrosque Deo simĭlis," etc. See note 23, Syntax.

[48] *a.* Verbs of *asking* and *entreating* also take an abl. of the person with *ab* or *de;* those of *inquiring,* an abl. of the thing with *de;* e. gr. "Percontari alĭquem *de* rê." *Peto,* in the sense of entreating, has always an abl. of the person with *à* or *ab,* as petĕre alĭquid *ab* alĭquo. *b.* Some

V. *The Ablative Case after the Verb.*

Quodvis verbum admittit ablatīvum significantem instrumentum, aut causam, aut modum actiōnis; ut,

Every verb admits an ablative case, signifying the instrument, cause, or manner of an action: as,

Hi jacŭlis, illi certant defendĕre saxis.—Virg.
Vehementĕr irâ excanduit. Mira celeritāte rem perēgit.[49]

Quibusdam verbis subjicĭtur nomen pretii in ablatīvo casu: ut,

A noun of price is put after some verbs in the ablative case: as,

Teruncio, seu vitiōsâ nuce non emĕrim.
Multōrum sanguĭne ac vulnerĭbus ea Pœnis victoria stetit.—Liv.

Vili, paulo, minĭmo, magno, nimio, plurĭmo, dimidio, duplo, per se sæpè ponuntur, subaudītâ voce *pretio*: ut,

Vili, paulo, minĭmo, magno, nimio, plurĭmo, dimidio, duplo, are often used alone, the word *pretio* being implied: as,

Vili venit tritĭcum.

Excipiuntur hi genitīvi sine substantīvis posĭti; *tanti, quanti, pluris, minōris, tantīdem, quantīvis, quantilĭbet, quanticunque,* etc.: ut,

Except these genitive cases, put without substantives; *tanti, quanti, pluris, minōris, tantidem, quantīvis, quantilĭbet, quanticunque,* etc.: as,

Tanti eris aliis, quanti tibi fuĕris.—Cic.

Flocci, nauci, nihĭli, pili, assis, hujus, teruncii, verbis æstimandi peculiarĭtèr adduntur: ut,

Flocci, nauci, nihĭli, pili, assis, hujus, teruncii, are properly added to verbs of esteeming: as,

Ego illum flocci pendo, nec hujus facio, qui me pili æstĭmat.[50]

---

verbs of *teaching* have the thing in the abl., e. gr. informo, instruo (properly, to *furnish*), imbuo, instituo, erudio,—aliquem *litĕris, artĭbus, lyrâ. c. Doceo* and its compounds, meaning to *give information*, are used with *de*—*De* itinĕre hostium Senātum edŏcet."

[49] The relation indicated by the abl. case after the verb, is what grammatical writers have called *concomitancy*, i. e. one person or thing accompanying another—either as the medium, or instrument, by which the subject of the verb operates, e. gr. "hi *jacŭlis*, illi—*saxis*;" as the cause or source of an action, e. gr. "*irâ* excanduit,"—he grew pale, anger being the cause of it; or as the manner of an action, e. gr. "mirâ *celeritāte* rem perēgit." A preposition is never expressed with the abl. of the instrument, see note 72, *d.* Syntax, though it is occasionally with the cause, *per, propter, ob, de, è, ex, præ;* and especially with the manner, *à, ab, cum, de, è* and *ex, per.*

[50] Also *pensi*, as "nihil *pensi* habēre,"—to esteem nothing of any weight. *Hujus* is found in the comic writers, and may, to use a vulgar

Verba abundandi, implendi, onerandi, et his diversa, ablatīvo junguntur: ut,

Verbs of abounding, filling, loading, and the contrary, are joined to an ablative case: as,

Amōre abundas, Antĭpho.—Ter.
Sylla omnes suos divitiis explēvit.—Sall.
Te quibus mendaciis hominēs levissĭmi onerārunt!—Cic.
Te hoc crimĭne expĕdi.—Ter.

Ex quibus quædam nonnunquam genitīvum regunt: ut,

Some of these occasionally govern a genitive case: as,

Implentur vetĕris Bacchi, pinguisque ferinæ.—Virg.
Quasi tu hujus indigeas patris.—Ter.

Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, dignor, muto, communĭco, supersedeo, ablatīvo junguntur: ut,

Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, dignor, muto, communĭco, supersedeo, are joined to an ablative case: as,

Qui adipisci veram gloriam volet, justitiæ fungātur officiis.—Cic.
Optĭmum est alĭēnd frui insaniā.
In re malâ, animo si bono utāre, juvat. Vescor carnĭbus.
Haud equidem tali me dignor honōre.—Vir.
Diruit, ædĭficat, mutat quadrāta rotundis.—Hor.
Communicābo te mensâ meâ.
Verbōrum multitudĭne supersedendum est.

Mereor, cum adverbiis *benè, malè, meliùs, pejùs, optĭmè, pessĭmè,* ablatīvo jungĭtur cum præpositiōne *de:* ut,

Mereor, with the adverbs, *benè, malè, meliùs, pejùs, optĭmè, pessĭmè,* are joined to an ablative case with the preposition *de:* as,

De me nunquam benè merĭtus est.

Quædam accipiendi, distandi, et auferendi verba, aliquando datīvo junguntur: ut,

Certain verbs of receiving, taking away, and being distant, are sometimes joined to a dative: as,

Paulùm sepultæ distat inertiæ
Celāta virtus.—Hor. *Erĭpe te moræ.*—Ibid.

Quibuslĭbet verbis addĭtur ablatīvus absolūtè sumptus: ut,

An ablative case, taken absolutely, is joined to any verbs: as,

Imperante Augusto, natus est Christus; imperante Tiberio, crucifixus.—Me duce, tutus eris.[51]

---

expression, be thus translated, "nec hujus facio,"—I don't care *that* for you!

[51] When two sentences, in English, are so united that each has its own proper and distinct subject, as "while *he* was thus hastening, *the*

Verbis quibusdam addĭtur ablatīvus partis affectæ, et poëtĭcè accusatīvus: as,

To some verbs is added an ablative case of the part affected, and by the poets an accusative: as,

Ægrōtat animo magis quàm corpŏre. Candet dentes. Rubet capillos.

Quædam usurpantur etiam cum genitīvo: ut,

Some of these verbs are also used with a genitive case: as,

Absurdè facis, qui angas te animi.—PLAUT.

VERBS PASSIVE.

Passīvis addĭtur ablatīvus *agentis*, sed antecedente *à* vel *ab* præpositiōne; et interdum datīvus: ut,

To passive verbs is added an ablative case of the *agent*, with the proposition *à* or *ab*; and sometimes a dative: as,

Laudātur ab his, culpātur ab illis.—HOR.
Honesta bonis viris, non occulta, quæruntur.[52]

Cætĕri casus manent in passīvis, qui fuērunt activōrum: ut,

The other cases continue in verbs passive, which belonged to them as actives: as,

Accusāris à me furti. Habebĕris ludibrio.
Dedocebĕris à me istos mores. Privabĕris magistrātu.

---

lictor came up," the sentence which was first conceived, or to which are prefixed the particles of time, *when, while, since, after that, &c.*, may be expressed in Latin, by the subject in the abl., and its verb changed into a participle agreeing with it; e. gr. "*illo* ita *festinante* (while he was thus hastening), lictor accessit:" the stars fly away, when the sun shines, "*sole oriente*, fugiunt stellæ." This form of expresion is called the "abl. absolute," because it has no syntactical relation to any word in the sentence. A participle, if not expressed, may usually be implied, e. gr. "me duce," i. e. *existente*, literally, "I *being* your guide." In the English language, the nom. is the absolute case;

> "God from the mount of Sinai, whose gray top
> Shall tremble, *He descending*."—MILTON.

[52] *a.* Whatever word is put in the acc. case after the active verb transitive, that, and that only, must in the same sense of the verb be the nom. case or subject to it in the passive voice; e. gr. "do *librum* tibi," I give you the book; passively, "*liber* datur tibi" the book is given to you. Hence it is, that, when a verb does not govern an acc. case in the active voice, it can have no passive, but impersonally, e. gr. "resisto *tibi*," I resist you; passively "*resistitur tibi*," you are resisted. *b.* The abl. of the agent with *à* or *ab* is extended to nouns which denote living beings by personification: "hoc error *à* philosophiâ pellātur," by philosophy,—as if the *persons* professing the philosophy were intended. *c.* The sign of the abl. of the agent is *by*; but when *by* denotes *subordinate* agency, it is rendered by *per* with an acc., as, "he sent me a letter *by a slave*,"—litĕras *per servum* misit.

Vapŭlo, veneo, liceo, exŭlo, fio, neutro-passīva, passīvam constructiōnem habent: ut,

Vapŭlo, veneo, liceo, exŭlo, fio, neuter-passives, have a passive construction: as,

A præceptōre vapulābis.
Malo à cive spoliāri, quàm ab hoste venīre.
Virtus parvo pretio licet ab omnibus.
Cur à convivantĭbus exŭlat philosophia?
Quid fiet ab illo?

Verbs of the Infinitive Mood.

Verbis quibusdam, participiis, et adjectīvis, adduntur verba infinīta et poëtĭcè substantīvis: ut,

Verbs of the infinitive mood are put after certain verbs, participles, and adjectives, and by the poets after substantives: as,

Dicĕre quæ puduit, scribĕre jussit amor.—Ov.
Jussus confundĕre fœdus.—Vir.
Erat tum dignus amāri.—Vir. *Tempus abīre tibi.*[53]

Ponuntur interdum sola, per ellipsin, verba infinīta: ut,

Sometimes an infinitive mood is set alone, by an ellipsis: as,

Hinc spargĕre voces
In vulgum ambiguas, et quærĕre conscius arma.[54]—Virg.

(Here *incipiēbat*, or some such verb, may be implied.)

Gerunds and Supines.

Gerundia et supīna regunt casus suōrum verbōrum: ut,

Gerunds and supines govern the cases of their respective verbs: as,

Efferor studio patres vestros videndi.—Cic.

---

[53] *a.* The verbs which an infinitive follows in this construction are chiefly these—amor, audio, cœpi, cogĭto, cogor, conor, constituo, consuevi, cupio, debet, incipio, nequeo, nolo, obliviscor, possum, scio, soleo, studeo, tento, volo. *b.* A noun substantive, after an infinitive, is almost confined to the poets: though Sallust has "libĭdo gratificāri," for *gratificandi:* Cæsar, "consilium fugĕre;" and Livy, "corpŏra curāre tempus est." *c. Dignus* and *indignus*, in the best prose writers, are mostly followed by *qui* and a subjunctive; "dignus est *qui amētur*," he is worthy of being loved; "dignus erit, *qui doceātur*," he will be worthy to be taught.

[54] The infinitive thus used by itself (instead of the present or imperfect indicative), is designated *Infinitīvus historĭcus*, or *narratorius*, that is, the historic infinitive. *Cœpit, cœpērunt*, or *incipiēbat*, does not always accord with the sense; "posse versus facĕre, jocum movēre."

Utendum[55] *est ætāte: cito pede præterit ætas.*—Ovid.
Scitātum oracŭla Phœbi mittimus.—Virg.

I. *Gerunds.*

Gerundia in *di* eandem cum genitīvis constructiōnem habent, et pendent à quibusdam tum substantīvis, tum adjectīvis: ut,

Gerunds in *di* have the same construction with genitive cases, and depend both on certain substantives and adjectives: as,

Cecropias innātus apes amor urget habendi.—Virg.
Ænēas celsâ in puppi jam certus eundi.[56]—Ibid.

Gerundia in *do*[57] eandem cum ablatīvis; et gerundia in *dum* cum accusatīvis, constructiōnem obtĭnent: ut,

Gerunds in *do*[57] have the same construction with ablative cases; and gerunds in *dum* with accusative cases: as,

Scribendi ratio conjuncta cum loquendo est.—Quinct.
Alĭtur vitium, vivitque tegendo.—Virg.
Locus ad agendum amplissimus.—Cic.

---

[55] Contrary to the view taken in the text, some grammarians consider, what is there called the gerund in *dum*, to be in reality a participle of the neuter gender; and while they admit the active signification of the gerunds in *di* and *do*, and, in some instances, even of the gerund in *dum*, yet they deny to this gerund the same governing influence when it is united to the substantive verb: thus they maintain that "utendum est" is an *impersonal* form of the deponent verb *utor*, I use, and means literally *it is to be used*. Without pretending to say which opinion is best supported by the general analogies of the Latin language, it is only necessary to explain this construction agreeably to the Eton rule. The passages in which this form of expression occurs are too numerous for us to doubt the accuracy of all, though some of them, as is observed by Crombie, are, without controversy, erroneous. Instances: Mihi *agitandum* est *vigilias*, Plaut. *Multa* nobis *clarandum* est, Lucret. Æternas quoniam *pœnas* in morte *timendum*, Ibid. Tanquam aliquam viam longam confecĕris, *quam* nobis quoque *ingrediendum* sit, Cic. Conclamātum propè ab universo senātu *perdomandum* ferōces *animos esse*, Liv. Consult *Notes* 58, 59, Syntax.

[56] A gen. plural is sometimes, even in Cicero, found after the gerund in *di*, instead of the case of its own verb, e. gr. "facultas *agrōrum* condonandi," the power of bestowing the lands,—i. e. *agros* condonandi.

[57] The gerund in *do* of the dative (not mentioned in the rules for the gerunds) usually follows such adjectives as *utĭlis, inutĭlis, noxius, aptus, idoneus, par, etc.*; e. gr. "par ferendo," capable of bearing; "non est solvendo," i. e. *idoneus*, he is not able to pay. More rarely, it is used after substantives and verbs to express a purpose or design; "simul aptat habendo ensem:" in this sense, the acc. with *ad* is more common in Cicero.

Cúm significātur *necessĭtas*, ponuntur gerundia in *dum*, citra præpositiōnem, addĭto verbo *est*: ut,

When *necessity* is signified, the gerunds in *dum* are used without a preposition, the verb *est* being added: as,

Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpŏre sano.—Juv.
Vigilandum est ei, qui cupit vincĕre. [58]

Vertuntur etiam gerundia in nomĭna adjectīva: ut,

Gerunds are also changed into the participle in *dus*: as,

Ad accusandos homĭnes duci præmio, proxĭmum latrocinio est.[59]

---

[58] The following analysis and remarks may serve to explain this construction (see Note 43, Syntax,) according to the above rule and the Eton distribution of the Latin verb. The gerund in *dum* is Englished like the present infinitive of its own verb, thus *amandum, amāre*, to love; *utendum, uti*, to employ: and the verb *est*, with a dative of the person, constantly signifies "to have," "belong to," as *est mihi liber*, I *have* a book, or a book *belongs to* me. Hence "orandum est mihi" may be be translated, I have to pray, to pray belongs to me, or even it is for me to pray; and praying being a duty, the necessity of it is at once inferred. Without much straining of the sense, therefore, this and similar usages would seem to convey some idea of obligation or propriety. Besides, it may not be ill-timed to observe, that *necessity*, which is in English expressed by the verb "must," and *obligation* by the verbs "ought" and "should," are both sometimes denoted by the verb "to have;" and that all these forms of expression may be rendered into Latin by the gerund (or the gerundive); as, "I must read," "I ought to read," "I have to read," *Mihi legendum est.* ["In such examples, the gerund in *dum* must be taken as a *nominative* to the verb *est*." Major, on this Rule.]

[59] The gerunds have the same regimen as the verbs of which they are a part; and since their form is the same as the neuter of the participle in *andus* or *endus*, a certain important relation is found to exist between the two. This is intimated by the rule, that "the gerunds are sometimes *changed* into nouns adjective," that is, into the participle in *dus*; e. gr. "ad accusandos homĭnes," for men to be accused, i. e. *ad accusandum homĭnes*, to accuse men. Though it is true, that the gerunds may all govern the cases of their respective verbs, yet a distinction made between those of a transitive, and those of an intransitive sense, will conduce greatly to elegant usage. Thus with verbs which have a dependent acc., the participle in *dus*, with the case of the gerund and the number and gender of the substantive, is most commonly to be preferred: instead of saying tempus petendi pacem, "the time of suing for peace," we should say, *tempus petendæ pacis*; instead of ad petendum pacem, it is better to write *ad petendam pacem*; and *à petendâ pace* rather than à petendo pacem. These remarks apply most particularly to what is called the "gerund of necessity," or the gerund in *dum* with *est*. If the verb of this gerund be intransitive, e. gr. *parco, utor*, the gerund is alone proper, as *parcendum est inimīcis*, we must spare our enemies—not inimīci sunt parcendi, which would be barbarous Latin: but if the verb of the gerund be transitive, then a different turn is given to the expres-

II. *Supines.*

Supīnum in *um* actīvè significat, et sequĭtur verbum aut participium, significans motum ad locum: ut,

The supine in *um* signifies actively, and follows a verb, or a participle, denoting motion to a place: as,

Spectātum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ.—Ovid.
Milĭtes sunt missi speculātum arcem.

Supīnum in *u* passīvè significat, et sequĭtur nomina adjectīva: ut,

The supine in *u* signifies passively, and follows nouns adjective: as,

Quod factu fœdum est, id'em est et dictu turpe.

Nouns of Time and Place.

I. *Time.*

Quæ significant partem tempŏris, in ablatīvo frequentiùs ponuntur: ut,

Nouns which signify a part of time, are generally put in the ablative case: as,

Nemo mortalium omnĭbus horis sapit.[60]—Plin.

Quæ autem durationem tempŏris significant, in accusatīvo ferè ponuntur: ut,

But nouns which signify the duration of time, are generally put in the accusative: as,

Hìc jam ter centum totos regnabĭtur annos.—Virg.

(We say also:) *In paucis diēbus, De die. De nocte.*
Promitto in diem. Commŏdo in mensem.
Annos ad quinquaginta natus. Per tres annos studui.
Puer id ætātis. Non plus triduum, aut, *triduo.*
Tertio, vel, *ad tertium calendas*, vel, *calendārum.*[61]

---

sion, and the participle in *dus* must universally be used; thus petendum est pacem, and scribendum est epistŏlam (I must write a letter), though grammatically correct, become "*pax est petenda,*" and "*scribenda est epistŏla.*" Hence the construction "pacem petendum," Virgil, Æn. xi, 230, (Delph. Edit.) may be considered corrupt; or, at all events, it is not to be imitated—it should be pacem petendam (esse).

[60] The point of time, or the time *when*, to be placed in the abl., must be contemporaneous with the tense of the verb; thus, "he invited me to dine with him next day in the gardens," *Secum* in hortis die postĕro *ut prandĕrem, invitāvit*—where *die postĕro* and *prandĕrem* refer to the same time. But if we say, "ad prandium me *in hortos* invitāvit *in postĕrum diem*,"—*in hortos* and *in postĕrum* become connected with *invitāvit*—he invited me to the gardens for, or against, the next day.

[61] *a. De die*, and *de nocte*, are perhaps not so common as *interdiu*, *noctu*, by day, by night: the two phrases may be combined, *die ac nocte*,

II. *The Space of a Place.*

Spatium loci in accusatīvo ponĭtur, interdum et in ablatīvo: ut,

The space of a place is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative case: as,

Jam mille passus processĕram.
Abest ab urbe quingentis millĭbus passuum.
Abest bidui: i. e. *spatium* vel *spatio, itinĕre* vel *iter.*

III. *The Names of Places.*

Omne verbum admittit genitīvum oppĭdi nomĭnis, in quo fit actio, modò primæ vel secundæ declinatiōnis, et singulāris numĕri sit: ut,

Every verb admits a gen. of the name of a city or town, in which any thing is done; so that it be of the 1st or 2nd declension, and of the singular number: as,

Quid Romæ[62] *faciam? mentīri nescio.*—Juv.

Hi genitīvi, *humi, domi, militiæ, belli, propriōrum* sequuntur formam: ut,

These genitive cases, *humi, domi, militiæ, belli,* follow the construction of proper names: as,

Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi.—Cic.
Unà semper militiæ et domi fuĭmus.—Ter.

Verùm si oppĭdi nomen plurālis duntaxàt numĕri, aut tertiæ declinatiōnis fuĕrit, in ablatīvo ponĭtur: ut,

But if the name of a city or town be of the plural number only, or of the 3rd declension, it is put in the abl. case: as,

Colchus, an Assyrius; Thebis nutrītus, an Argis.—Hor.
Romæ Tibur amem, ventōsus; Tibŭre Romam.—Ib.

---

die noctuque, nocte et interdiu. "In tempŏre," or "tempŏre" alone, is used for *in good time*. *b*. The abl. without a preposition is used with some general designations of place; "terrâ marique," by sea and land: *loco* and *locis*, where they are joined with adjectives and pronouns, "hoc loco," "multis locis." Loco is equivalent to *loco suo*, in its right place.

[62] This gen. is considered to be under the government of the abl. *in urbe;* and therefore, the nouns *urbs, oppĭdum, locus*, when used in apposition to it, are placed in the *ablative:* e. gr. "natus est Romæ, *loco nobĭli*"—not loci nobĭlis. *Note.*—Romæ signifies at, or *in* Rome—ad Romam, at, or *near* Rome.

Verbis significantĭbus motum ad locum ferè addĭtur nomen loci in accusatīvo sine præpositiōne: ut,

The name of a place is commonly put after verbs of motion *to* a place, in the accusativi without a preposition: as,

Concessi Cantabrigiam[63] *ad capiendum ingenii cultum.*

Ad hunc modum utĭmur *domus* et *rus:* ut,

After this manner we use *domus* and *rus:* as,

Ite domum, satŭræ, venit Hespĕrus.—Ego rus ibo.

Verbis significantĭbus motum à loco ferè addĭtur nomen loci in ablatīvo sine præpositiōne: ut,

After verbs signifying motion *from* a place, the name of the place is commonly put in the ablative without a preposition: as,

Nisi ante Româ profectus esses, nunc eam relinquĕres.[64]

Verbs Impersonal.

Impersonalia nominatīvum non habent: ut,

Impersonal verbs have no nominative case: as,

Juvat ire sub umbras.[65]

---

[63] *a.* The rules, by which the preposition is omitted after verbs of motion, or which imply motion, *to* or *from* a place, should properly be restricted to the names of cities or towns, and of some smaller islands; for the preposition should always be expressed before the names of countries, regions, and other places. Ire *in* Italiam, *in* Galliam; *ab* Hispaniâ reversus est—and also before the name of a town when it has an adjective, as *ad doctas* Athēnas. *b.* The following peculiarities deserve attention: we say Phaëton fell *into* the Po, *in* Italy; classical writers said "Phaëton in Padum *in Italiam* ceclĭdit"—that is, into Italy, *into* the Po. He removed from his farm *at* Capua,—"*Capuâ* ex agello in Sardiniam migrāvit," *from Capua.*

[64] See the preceding Note.

[65] Impersonal verbs, in Latin, do not admit a person as their nom. case or subject, the person being always put in the acc. case which the verb governs: I delight, "*me* juvat;" thou repentest, "pœnĭtet *te;*" they are weary, "*illos* tædet;" who delights, "*quem delectat.*" It is often difficult for the learner to determine when he ought to employ the impersonal, and when the personal form of the verb. Crombie furnishes the following plain rules:— *a.* If the verb, in English, be followed by an infinitive mood, the impersonal verb should be employed, to which the infinitive mood is, strictly speaking, the subject; as, I please to read, *placet mihi legĕre,* i. e. to read pleases me. If it be not followed by an infinitive mood in English, the personal verb must be used, as I please all men; *omnĭbus placeo.* *b.* If the nom. case to the verb, in English, be active, the personal verb must be employed, as, I delight my friends,

Hæc impersonalia, *intĕrest* et *refert*, quibuslĭbet genitīvis junguntur; præter hos ablatīvos fœminīnos, *meâ*, *tuâ*, *suâ*, *nostrâ*, *vestrâ*, et *cujâ*: ut,

These impersonals, *intĕrest* and *refert*, are joined to any genitive cases; besides these abl. cases feminine, *meâ*, *tuâ*, *suâ*, *nostra*, *vestrâ*, *cujâ*: as,

Intĕrest magistrātus tuĕri bonos, animadvertĕre in malos.
Tuâ refert teipsum nôsse.

Adduntur et hi genitīvi, *tanti*, *quanti*, *magni*, *parvi*, *quanticunque*, *tantīdem*: ut,

Also these genitive cases, *tanti*, *quanti*, *magni*, *parvi*, *quanticunque*, *tantīdem*: as,

Tanti refert honesta agĕre.

Datīvum postŭlant impersonalia acquisitīvè posĭta; quæ autem transitīvè ponuntur, accusatīvum: ut,

Verbs impersonal, put acquisitively, require a dative case; but those put transitively, an accusative: as,

A Deo nobis benĕfit. *Me juvat ire per altum.*

His verò *attĭnet*, *pertĭnet*, *spectat*, propriè addĭtur præpositio *ad*: ut,

But the preposition *ad* is peculiarly added to *attĭnet*, *pertĭnet*, *spectat*: as,

Me vis dicĕre quod ad te attĭnet?—Ter.
Spectat ad omnes benè vivĕre.—Cicero.

His impersonalĭbus subjicĭtur accusatīvus cum genitīvo, *pœnĭtet*, *tædet*, *misĕret*, *miserescit*, *pudet*, *piget*: ut,

These verbs impersonal, *pœnĭtet*, *tædet*, *misĕret*, *miserescit*, *pudet*, *piget*, take an accusative case with a genitive: as,

Si ad centesĭmum vixisset annum, senectūtis eum suæ non pœnitĕret.—Cic. *Misĕret me tui.*[66]

---

amicos meos *delecto*; that is, I *perform* the action of delighting. But if the nom. case be passive (that is, *suffer* the action), the impersonal verb should be used, as, I delight to read, *delectat* me *legĕre*, i. e. to read delights me,—equivalent to I am delighted with reading, or *delector legendo*.

[66] Many writers on the Latin Syntax state, that the word in the gen. always represents a *thing*, but erroneously: it may be a person, e. gr. "misĕret me *tui*," or a thing, whichever happens to denote the source of the feeling expressed in the verb; thus "pudet me *culpæ*," I am ashamed of my fault—I feel shame *because of* my fault. Instead of a gen. is sometimes found an infinitive mood, e. gr. "non pudet me hoc *fecisse*;" a proposition with *quòd*, "pœnĭtet me, *quòd te offendi*;" or with an indefinite word, e. gr. "non pœnĭtet me, *quantum profecĕrim*."

Verbum impersonāle passīvæ vocis pro singŭlis personis utriusque numĕri elegantèr accĭpi potest: ut,

A verb impersonal of the passive voice may elegantly be taken for each person of both numbers: as,

Statur; i. e. *sto, stas, stat, stamus, statis, stant:*
Viz. *statur à me,* i. e. *sto; statur ab illis,* i. e. *stant.*

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES.[67]

Participia regunt casus verbōrum à quibus derivantur: ut,

Participles govern the cases of the verbs from which they are formed: as,

Duplĭces tendens ad sidĕra palmas, talia voce refert.

Participiis passīvæ vocis addĭtur interdum datīvus, præsertim si exeunt in *dus:* ut,

A dative is sometimes added to participles of the passive voice, especially if they end in *dus:* as,

Magnus civis obiit, et formidātus Othōni.
Restat Chremes, qui mihi exorandus est.—Ter.

Participia cùm fiunt nomĭna, genitīvum exĭgunt: ut,

Participles, when they become nouns, require a genitive case: as,

Alĭēni appĕtens, sui profūsus.[68]—Sall.

Exōsus, perōsus, pertæsus, actīvè significantia accusatīvum exĭgunt: ut,

Exōsus, perōsus, pertæsus, signifying actively, require an accusative case: as,

Astronŏmus exōsus ad unam mulĭeres.
Immundam segnitiem perōsæ. Pertæsus ignaviam suam.

---

[67] The chief use of the Latin participle, which is often quite arbitrary, is conciseness, or, according to some, variety and elegance of expression. It is employed to mark a number of relations which, in English, are expressed by particles, *as, when, although, since, &c.* When two sentences in juxta-position have one common subject or nom. case, that which in the order of time was first conceived, or which is an explanation or definition of the other, may be rendered by the Latin participle: e. gr. I rejoice, *when I see* you, "gaudeo, te *videns,*" equivalent to *cùm, quamdiu te video.* "Homo, *amans* (or *qui amat*) Deum, felix est," the man, who loves God, is happy. In like manner, the participle is used referring to some person in the leading sentence; "*Curio,* ad forum *sedenti* (as he sat), hoc attulērunt." See *Note* 66, Syntax.

[68] A participle, as has before been remarked, is incapable of comparison: but when it is divested of the idea of time, it becomes a participial adjective, capable of comparison, and governing the gen. case: e. gr. *amans virtūtem,* one at present loving virtue; *amans virtūtis,* a lover of virtue. *Doctus linguam Latīnam,* one who has been taught the Latin tongue; *doctus linguæ Latīnæ,* skilled in Latin.

Exōsus et *perōsus*, passivè significantia, cum datīvo leguntur: ut,

Exōsus and *perōsus*, signifying passively, are read with a dative case: as,

Exōsus Deo et sanctis. Germāni Romānis perōsi sunt.

Natus, prognātus, satus, cretus, creātus, ortus, editus, ablatīvum exĭgunt; et sæpè cum præpositiōne: ut,

Natus, prognātus, satus, cretus, creātus, ortus, editus, require an ablative case; and often with a preposition: as,

Bona bonis prognāta parentĭbus.
Sate sanguine divûm. Quo sanguĭne cretus.—Virg.
Venus, orta mari, mare præstat cunti.—Ovid.
Terrâ editus. Edita de magno flumĭne nympha fui.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.[69]

En et *ecce*, demonstrandi adverbia, nominatīvo frequentiùs junguntur; accusatīvo rariùs: ut,

En and *ecce*, adverbs of shewing, are joined to a nominative case; rarely to an accusative: as,

En Priămus.—Virg. *Ecce tibi status noster.*—Cic.
En quatuor aras:
Ecce duas tibi Daphni; duóque altaria Phœbo.—Virg.

En et *ecce*, exprobrandi, soli accusatīvo junguntur: ut,

En and *ecce*, adverbs of upbraiding, are joined only to an accusative: as,

En animum et mentem.—Juv. *Ecce autem altĕrum.*—Ter.

Some adverbs of time, of place, and of quantity, admit a genitive case.

1. Loci; ut, *ubi, ubĭnam, nusquam, eò, longè, quò, ubĭvis, huccĭnè, etc.*: ut,

1. Of place; as, *ubi, ubĭnam, nusquam, eò, longè, quò, ubĭvis, huccĭnè, etc.*: as,

Ubi gentium?—Nusquam loci invenītur.
Eò impudentiæ ventum est.—Quo terrārum abiit?

---

[69] *a.* Two negatives in the same sentence make an affirmative in Latin, as in English, e. gr. *non nego*, I do not deny it,—i. e. I own or admit it; hence *I cannot but*, an expression nearly equivalent to *I must*, is rendered by non possum non, non potest esse, or fiĕri, quin; non possum quin, i. e. quod non, e. gr. "non possum non amāre," "haud possum quin amāre,"—*I cannot but love. b. Nemo non* denotes *quisque*, as "nemo non odit," all men hate: but *non nemo* signifies *aliquis*, as "non nemo odit," some men hate. *c. Non modò* is frequently used for *non modò non*, the omission of the second *non* in such instances creating no ambiguity; e. gr. "Romæ *non modò* civĭcæ, sed ne Italĭcæ quidem stirpis"—for *non modò non* civĭcæ, not only not of a Roman, but not of an Italian family.

2. Tempŏris; ut, *nunc, tunc, tum, interèa, pridie, prostridie, etc.* : ut,

2. Of time; as *nunc, tunc, tum, interèa, pridie, postridie, etc.* : as,

Nihil tunc tempŏris amplius, quàm flere potĕram.
Pridie ejus diēi pugnam iniĕrunt.
—Pridie calendārum, vel, *calendas.*

3. Quantitātis; ut, *parùm, satìs, abundè, etc.* : ut,

3. Of quantity; as, *parùm, satìs, abundè, etc.* : as,

Satìs eloquentiæ, sapientiæ parùm.—SALL.
Abundè fabulārum audivĭmus.

Quædam casus admittunt nomĭnum undè deducta sunt : ut,

Some adverbs admit the cases of the nouns from which they are derived : as,

Sibi inutilĭtèr vivit. Proxĭmè Hispaniam Mauri sunt.
Melĭùs vel optĭmè omnium. Amplĭùs opiniōne morabātur.

Adverbia diversitātis, *alĭter, sècùs ;* et illa duo, *antè, pòst,* ablativo non rarò junguntur : ut,

These adverbs of diversity, *alĭter, sècùs ;* and these two, *antè, pòst,* are often joined to an ablative case : as,

Multo alĭter. Paulo sècùs. Multo antè.
Paulo pòst. Longo pòst tempŏre venit.—VIRG.

Instar et *ergò*, adverbialĭtèr sumpta, genitivum post se habent : ut,

Instar and *ergò*, used as adverbs, have a genitive case after them : as,

Instar montis equum, divīnâ Pallădis arte,
Ædificant.—VIRG. *Donāri virtūtis ergò.* CIC.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.[70]

Conjunctiōnes copulatīvæ, et disjunctīvæ, simĭles casus, modos, et tempŏra, conjungunt : ut,

Conjunctions, copulative and disjunctive, connect the like cases, moods, and tenses : as,

Socrătes docuit Xenophontem et Platōnem.
Recto stat corpŏre, despĭcitque terras,
Nec scribit, nec legit.

---

[70] *a.* Strictly speaking, all conjunctions couple, not nouns, but verbs and sentences; except those which denote addition, concomitancy, or conjunction, as *et, ac, atque*, and these connect sentences, nouns and verbs. *b.* The conjunction *ac* is not used before the letters *c* and *g*, at the beginning of a sentence, nor before a vowel. Hensinger, the editor of Cic. de Off., disapproves the position of *ac*, before *c* and *g*, in any part of a sentence.

Nisi variæ constructiōnis ratio aliud poscat: ut,

Unless the reason of a different construction requires it to be otherwise: as,

Emi librum centussi et pluris. Vixi Romæ et Venetiis.
Nisi me lactâsses amantem, et falsâ spe producĕres.

Quàm sæpè intelligĭtur post *ampliùs*, *plùs*, et *minùs*: ut,

Quàm is often understood after *ampliùs*, *plùs*, and *minùs*: as,

Ampliùs sunt sex menses.—Cic.
Paulò plùs trecenta vehicŭla sunt amissa.—Liv.
Nunquam nix minùs quatuor pedes ultra jacuit.—Ib.

To what moods certain adverbs and conjunctions belong.

Ne, *an*, *num*, dubitatīvè aut indefinītè posĭta, subjunctīvo junguntur: ut,

Ne, *an*, *num*, used doubtfully, or indefinitely, are joined to a subjunctive mood: as,

Nihil refert fecĕrisne an persuasĕris.[71] *Vise, num redĭerit.*

Dum, pro *dummŏdo* et *quousque*, subjunctīvum postŭlat: ut,

Dum, for *dummŏdo* and *quousque*, requires a subjunctive mood: as,

Dum prosim tibi. Tertia dum regnantem vidĕrit æstas.

Qui, causam signifĭcans, subjunctīvum exĭgit: ut,

Qui, signifying the cause, requires a subjunctive mood: as,

Stultus es, qui huic credas.

Ut, pro *postquàm*, *sicut*, et *quomŏdo*, indicatīvo jungĭtur; cùm autem *quanquam*, *utpŏte*, vel *finālem causam* denŏtat, subjunctīvo: ut,

Ut, for *postquàm*, *sicut*, and *quomŏdo*, is joined to an indicative mood; but for *quanquam*, *utpŏte*, or denoting the *final cause*, to a subjunctive: as,

Ut sumus in ponto, ter frigŏre constĭtit Ister.—Ovid.
Ut tute es, ita omnes censes esse—Plaut.
Ut omnia contingant, quæ volo, levāri non possum.—Cic.
Non est tibi fidendum, ut qui toties fefellĕris.
Te oro, Dave, ut redeat jam in viam.—Ter.

---

[71] *a.* The particles *ne* and *an* are here used correlatively, or in relation to one another. *An*, which signifies *or*, always introduces the *latter* alternative; the former may be introduced by *utrùm* or *num*, as well as by *ne*: thus *utrùm*, or *num*, *fecĕris*, or *fecĕrisne*,—an persuasĕris. *b.* To distinguish *seu*, *sive*, from *utrùm*, *an*, it must be observed that when "whether," "or," can be turned into "either," "or," and when they can be expressed by *be*, or *be it that*, "seu, sive," must be used, e. gr. "sivé soror, sivé uxor," be she his sister, or his wife; "sive reges erĭmus, sive colōni," be it, that we are kings, or husbandmen.

Omnes denĭque voces indefinītè posĭtæ, quales sunt *quis*, *quantus*, *quotus*, *etc.*, subjunctīvum postŭlant: ut,	All words put indefinitely, such as *quis*, *quantus*, *quotus*, *etc.*, require a subjunctive mood: as,

Cui scribam video.—Cic. *Quantus*
In clypeum assurgat; quo turbine torqueat hastam.—Virg.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS.[72]

Præpositio subaudīta interdum facit ut addātur ablatīvus: ut,	A preposition understood sometimes causes an ablative case to be added: as,

[72] *a.* The office of prepositions, as governing words, is precisely the same as that of the endings of nouns, pronouns, and participles,—namely, to point out various relations between the words with which they are connected. It should be observed, that the case, which any preposition governs, denotes a relation analogous to the preposition itself, "natus ad gloriam," born for glory; where *ad* and the accusative *gloriam* mark the object for which the person is born. *b.* It may be time to inform the more advanced pupil, that the six cases may be divided, according to the relations they generally express, into three couples: a similarity of relation may be traced between the nom. and voc. cases, as denoting the *subjects* of discourse; between the gen, and the abl., in the use of which the attention is drawn *backward* to the cause of a thing, or the source or medium of an action; between the dat. and the acc., in the use of which the attention is directed *forward* to some end. This seems to explain the reason why we find some declined words having a double construction, the gen. being frequently varied by the abl. with or without the prepositions *à, ab, de, è, ex,* (see *Note* 24, Syntax),—and the dat. being occasionally varied by the acc.; thus "utĭlis huic rei," "utĭlis ad hanc rem," are equivalent expressions, in which the dat. *rei*, and the acc. *ad rem*, shew the *end* for which one is said to be useful. *c.* When the preposition may be omitted or expressed without injury to the sense, the expression of it will be found emphatical: solis occāsu, "at sun-set;" *cum* solis occāsu, more precisely "as soon as ever the sun was set." *d. Cum*, with, denotes mere concomitancy or conjunction; e. gr. "ingressus est *cum gladio*," with or having a sword, he entered; though both Cæsar and Livy, in some military expressions, frequently omit *cum*. But, as has before been hinted, *cum* is never expressed with the abl. of the instrument, thus we say, "suo gladio hunc jugŭlo," I stab this man with his own sword; and "calămo scribĕre," to write with a pen,—the sword (gladio) and the pen (calămo) being used as *instruments* of stabbing and writing. *e.* Some few prepositions are called inseparable, because they are never used as separate words: *amb*, as ambio; *com*, for cum, as compōno; *dis*, or *di* (asunder), disjicio, dilīgo; *re* (back or again), as rejicio; *se* (apart, aside, without), as sepōno; *ve* (little, in a small degree), as vecors, deficient in sense, vesānus, without understanding; *ne* (negation), as nefas, not right, not lawful. *f.* Prepositions used without a case become adverbs; qui *circà* habĭtant, who dwell without: *suprà*, (supĕrâ parte) above, as suprà dixi: *coràm* orally, personally, as tecum coràm loquĕrer.

Habeo te loco parentis: id est, *in loco.*

Præpositio in compositiōne eundem nonnunquam casum regit, quem et extra compositiōnem regēbat: ut,

A preposition in composition sometimes governs the same case, which it governed out of composition: as,

Detrŭdunt naves scopŭlo. Prætereo te insalutātem.

Verba composĭta cum *à, ab, ad, con, de, è, ex, in,* nonnunquam repĕtunt easdem præpositiōnes cum suo casu extra compositiōnem, idque elegantèr: ut,

Verbs compounded with *à, ab, ad, con, de, è, ex, in,* sometimes repeat the same prepositions with their case out of composition, and that elegantly: as,

Abstinuērunt à vino.[73]

In, pro *erga, contra, ad,* et *supra,* accusatīvum exĭgit: ut,

In, for *erga, contra, ad,* and *supra,* takes an acc. case: as,

Accĭpit in Teucros animum, mentémque benignam.—Virg.
In commŏda publĭca peccem. In regnum quærĭtur hæres.
—Reges in ipsos imperium est Jovis.—Hor.

Sub, cùm ad tempus refertur, accusatīvo ferè jungĭtur: ut,

Sub, relating to time, is commonly joined to an accusative case: as,

Sub idem tempus: i. e. *circa,* vel, *per idem tempus.*—Liv.

Super, pro *ultra,* accusatīvo; pro *de,* ablatīvo apponĭtur: ut,

Super, for *ultra,* requires an accusative; for *de,* an ablative case: as,

Super et Garamantas, et Indos proferet imperium.
Multo super Priămo rogĭtans, super Hectŏre multa.

Tenùs ablatīvo et singulāri et plurāli jungĭtur: ut,

Tenùs is joined to an ablative, both in the singular and plural number: as,

Pube tenus, Pectorĭbus tenus.—Ovid.

At genitīvo tantùm plurāli, et semper casum suum sequĭtur: ut,

But in the plural number to a genitive only; and always follows its case: as,

Crurum tenus.—Virg.

---

[73] This is most frequently done, in prose, with verbs compounded with *ad, con, de, in;* as adhibeo, confĕro, conjungo, communĭco, compăro, contendo, imprĭmo, inesse, inscrĭbo, interesse (to be between, or, there is a difference). *Incumbo,* to lean or press upon, is used with a dat., e. gr. "incumbĕre bacŭlo;" but in the sense of *applying to a pursuit,* with *in* or *ad;* e. gr. "*ad* laudem incumbĕre"—"*in* rempublĭcam incumbĕre."

THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.[74]

Interjectiōnes non rarò sine casu ponuntur: ut,

Interjections are often used without any case: as,

Spem gregis, ah! silĭce in nuda connixa relīquit.—VIRG.
Quæ, malùm, dementia!

O, exclamantis, nominatīvo, accusatīvo, et vocatīvo, jungĭtur: ut,

O, of one exclaiming, is joined to a nominative, an accusative, and a vocative case: as,

O festus dies hominis!—TER.
O fortunātos nimiùm, sua si bona nōrint, agricŏlas!
O formōse puer! nimiùm ne crede colōri.—VIRG.

Heu et *proh*, nunc nominatīvo, nunc accusativo, junguntur: ut,

Heu and *proh*, are joined sometimes to a nom. and sometimes to an accusative case: as,

Heu pĭctas, heu prisca fides! Heu stirpem invīsam!—VIRG.
Proh Jupĭter! tu, homo, adĭgis me ad insaniam.—TER.
Proh deŭm atque hominum fidem!—TER.

Item vocatīvo; ut,

Also to a vocative case; as,

Proh sancte Jupĭter!—CIC.

Hei et *væ* datīvo junguntur: ut,

Hei and *væ* are joined to a dative: as,

Hei mihi, quòd nullis amor est medicabĭlis herbis!—OVID.
Væ misĕro mihi! quantâ de spe decĭdi!—TER.

---

[74] The interjections which occur most frequently in Latin are the following:—
Of joy: *Io, iu, ha, he, ha-ha-he, evoë, evax.*
Of grief: *Væ, heu, eheu, ohe, au, hei, proh.*
Of astonishment; *O, en* or *ecce, hui, hem, ehem, ah, ahah, papæ, vah*; of dislike, *phui, apăge.*
Of calling: *Heus, o, ohe, ehŏdum*; of attestation, *pro*, written also *proh.*
Of praise: *Eia, euge.*

PROSODY.[1]

Prosodia est pars Grammatĭcæ, quæ quantitātem syllabārum docet.	Prosody is that part of Grammar, which teaches the quantity of syllables.
Dividĭtur Prosodia in tres partes, *Tonum*, *Spirĭtum*, et *Tempus*.	Prosody is divided into three parts, the *Tone*, the *Breathing*, and the *Time*.
Hoc loco visum est nobis de *Tempŏre* tantùm tractāre.	In this place, it is thought proper to treat only of *Time*.
Tempus est syllăbæ proferendæ mensūra.	Time is the measure of a syllable to be uttered.
Pes duārum syllabārum pluriúmve constitutio est, ex certâ tempŏrum observatiōne.[2]	A foot is the union of two, three, or four syllables, with due regard to quantity.[2]

[1] To treat of Prosody in all its branches, would quite exceed both the limits and the design of an elementary Grammar. The Eton Introduction pretends not to enter farther upon this subject, than to initiate the learner into the versification of Ovid and Virgil; and this will probably be deemed sufficient by Masters in general, who commonly furnish the senior pupil with a separate and complete Treatise on the Metrical Feet and different Species of Verse. We shall therefore confine ourselves (at least in this Edition) to a strict elucidation of the text.

[2] *a.* The parts or members of a verse were called *numĕri* by the Romans, from *numĕrus*, a measured part of an air, in Music: hence *pedes*, or "numĕri poëtĭci," are the measured parts of a verse. *b.* A combination of feet, in a poetic sense, constitutes a *verse*. *c.* In most kinds of verse, a foot constitutes a *metre;* and, according to the number of feet or metres which a verse contains, it is called *Monomĕter, Dimĕter, Trimĕter, Tetramĕter, Pentamĕter, Hexamĕter*, i. e. a verse of one, two, three, four, five, or six feet. *d.* But, with respect to metres, the learner must examine whether the verse is complete, deficient, or redundant. A complete verse is said to be *Acatalectic:* a verse which wants one syllable at the end, is called *Catalectic;* but *Brachycatalectic*, if wanting one whole foot, or half a metre: and if the verse has a redundant syllable, it is named *Hypercatalectic* or hypermetrical.

Spondæus est dissyllăbus; ut, *vīrtūs.*

A spondee is a foot of two syllables, both long; as, *vīrtūs.*

Dactўlus est trisyllăbus; ut, *scrībĕrĕ.*

A dactyl is a foot of three syllables, the first long, and last two short: as *scrībĕrĕ.*

Scansio est legitĭma versûs in singŭlos pedes commensuratio.

To SCAN, is to divide a verse into its proper feet, according to certain rules.

Note.—In scanning, *h* is not considered as a letter.

Scansiōni accĭdunt figūræ, Synalœpha, Ecthlipsis, Synærĕsis, Diærĕsis, et Cæsūra.

To scanning, belong these figures, Synalœpha, Ecthlipsis, Synærĕsis, Diærĕsis, and Cæsūra.

1. *Synalœpha* est elisio vocālis in fine dictiōnis, ante altĕram in initio sequentis: ut,

1. *Synalœpha* is the elision of one vowel at the end of a word, before another vowel at the beginning of the next: as,

Sēră nĭ|mīs vīt' | est, || *crāstĭnă | vīv' hŏdĭ|ē:* pro *vita, vive.*[3]—MART.

At *heu* et *o* nunquam intercipiuntur.[4]

But *heu* and *o* are never struck out.[4]

---

[3] Synalœpha, or elision, must not be too frequent, or the sound of the verse will be injured: the following line, for instance, has scarcely any thing of the sound of poetry:—

Quōd *si* ĭn ĕ|ō spătĭ|*o* ātque ān|*te* ācta ē|tātĕ fŭ|ērē.—LUCRET.

b. This figure is sometimes found on the last syllable of the hexameter; e. gr.

Omnĭă | Mērcŭrĭ|ō sĭmĭ|līs, vō|cēmquĕ cŏ|lōrēm|*que*
Et crī|nēs flā|vos.—VIRG.

c. If Synalœpha is neglected, after the custom of the Greeks, a *hiatus* is occasioned from the two vowels coming together: this is is called a *poetic license;* e. gr.

Tēr sūnt | cōnā|*tĭ* ĭm|pōnĕrĕ | Pēlĭŏ | Ossām,—VIRG.

But this rarely happens with a short vowel;

Et vēr|a ĭncēs|sū pătŭ|ĭt Dĕă.| Ille ŭbĭ | mātrēm
Agnōvĭt, etc.—VIRG.

A pause in the sense, by preventing the immediate concurrence of the vowels, sometimes prevents elision; e. gr.

Pōsthăbĭ|tā cŏlŭ|īssĕ Să mō: | hīc | īllĭŭs | ārmā.

[4] Nor are the interjections *væ, io, ah, vah, proh,* ever elided.

2. *Ecthlipsis* est, quoties *m* cum suâ vocāli perimĭtur, proxĭmâ dictiōne à vocāli exorsâ: ut,

2. *Ecthlipsis* is when the letter *m* with its vowel at the end of a word is cut off, the next word beginning with a vowel: as,

Mōnstr' hōr|rēnd' ĭn|fōrm' ĭn|gēns cuī | lūmĕn ăd|ēmptūm.[5]—VIRG. pro *monstrum, horrendum, informe.*

3. *Synærĕsis* est, duārum syllabārum in unam contractio: ut,

3. *Synærĕsis* is the pronunciation of two syllables as one: as,

Seū lēn|tō fŭĕ|rīnt ăl|veārĭă | vīmĭnĕ | tēxtā.[6]—VIRG.

(As if it were written *alvāria.*)

4. *Diærĕsis* est, ubi ex unâ syllăbâ dissectâ fiunt duæ: ut,

4. *Diærĕsis* is when one syllable is made into two syllables: as,

Dēbŭĕ|rānt fū|sōs || ēvŏlŭ|ĭssĕ sŭ|ōs: pro *evolvisse.*—OVID.

5. *Cæsūra*[7] est, cum post pedem absolūtum, syllăba brevis in fine dictiōnis extendĭtur: ut,

5. *Cæsūra*[7] is when, after a perfect foot, a short syllable at the end of a word is made long: as,

Pēctŏrĭ|būs ĭnhĭ|ānsspī|rāntĭă | cōnsŭlĭt | ēxtā.—VIRG.

---

[5] *a.* The elision of *m* by Ecthlipsis, like the elision of a vowel by Synalœpha, extends to the last foot of an hexameter:—

Aūt dūl|cīs mūs|tī Vūl|cānō | dēcŏquĭt | hūmōr|*em*
Et, etc.—VIRG.

But this should never occur at the beginning of a verse:—

Nam ūt fĕrŭ|lā cæ|dās mĕrĭ|tūm mā|jōră sŭb|īrē.—HOR.

b. Ennius and Lucretius sometimes neglect this elision at the end of a foot: e. gr. "milĭtŭm | octō."—ENN.

Vōmĕrĕm | ātqŭe lŏ|cīs ā|vērtīt | sēmĭnĭs | ĭctūm.—LUCRET.

c. The same poets often elide *s* at the end of a word, for metrical convenience: e. gr. "hōrrĭdŭ' | mīlēs;"—fōntībŭ' | māgnīs, for *horridus, fontibus.*

[6] Thus Dii and Diis are often pronounced in poetry as one word, *dî, dîs:* alveo, aureis, anteit, iidem, deinde, deinceps, deest, deero, deerit, as words of two syllables, *alvō, aurīs, dĕrit, etc.:* gravedlens, semihŏmo, and semiustus, as three syllables, thus, *grav'olens, sem'homo, sem'ustus:* and semianĭmis, as *sem'anĭmis.*

[7] *a.* This term has two meanings; the legitimate cæsura relates to the lengthening of a syllable which is naturally short; as, *us* in *pectorĭbus.* The opposite anomaly to this, or the shortening of a syllable naturally

SPECIES OF VERSE.

Versus Heroïcus,[8] qui Hexaměter etiam dicĭtur, constat ex sex pedĭbus: quintus locus dactўlum, sextus spondæum peculiarĭtĕr sibi vindĭcat; relĭqui hunc, vel illum, proüt volŭmus: ut,

An Heroic verse,[8] named also an Hexameter, is composed of six feet; the first four, dactyls or spondees; the fifth, a dactyl; and the sixth, a spondee: as,

Tĭtўrĕ | tū pătŭ|læ rĕcŭ|bāns sūb | tĕgmĭnĕ | fāgī.—VIRG.

---

long, is called *Systŏle*; e. gr. *abstulēruntque*, and *stetēruntque*, are read in Virgil as if they were "abstulĕruntque," and "stetĕruntque." *b.* The other meaning attached to cæsura relates to the *cutting* or *division* of a foot between different words, so that the last syllable of a word shall be the first syllable of a foot; e. gr.

Ună să|lūs vīc|tīs nūl|lām spē|rārĕ să|lūtēm.

c. The more cæsural pauses a verse contains, the more agreeably it sounds; but where there is no cæsura at all, the line is necessarily very inharmonious:—

In tē | quæ bŏnă | sūnt, ĕă | nōn mălĕ | pōnĕrĕ | dēbēs.

Scarcely any thing can be more disagreeable to the ear, than a verse in which not only there is no cæsural pause, but which consists almost wholly of spondees:—

Urbēm | fōrtēm | nūpēr | eēpīt | fōrtĭŏr | hōstīs.
Vēstrō, | Mūsēē, | Phœbō | dūlcīs | pāngĭtĕ | vērsūs.

d. If there is only one cæsural pause in an hexameter, it is commonly in the middle of the third foot:—

1 2 3 4 5 6
Pīnguĭs ĕt | īngrā|*tæ* prĕmĕ|rētūr | cāsĕŭs | ūrbī.

If there are two cæsuras, they commonly fall on the 2nd and 4th feet:—

1 2 3 4 5 6
Nōn ōm|*nēs* ār|būstă jŭ|*vānt* hŭmĭ|līsquĕ mў|rīcæ.

e. The cæsura after the first foot is styled *trithemiměris*, i. e. third half; after the second foot, *penthemiměris*, i. e. fifth half; after the third, *hepthemiměris*, or seventh half; after the fourth foot, *ennehemiměris*.

[8] *a.* An Heroic verse is named *Dactylic Hexameter*; and a poem consisting of this species of verse, in which are celebrated heroes and their exploits, is designated an "Heroic Poem." But let it be observed, that to constitute a poem truly heroic, the subject and nature of the poem, and the species of the verse, must correspond, as the *Eneid* of Virgil; for neither the Bucolics nor the Georgics of Virgil can be styled heroic, though their metre is the same, because their subjects are *pastoral*, and relate to *Husbandry*. A verse in which dactyls greatly preponderate, suggests the idea of rapid motion:—

Quādrŭpĕdānté pŭtrēm sŏnĭtū quătĭt ūngŭlă cāmpūm.

b. The best verses, (and more especially the pentameter,) are written on the principle of attracting attention to their close. *c.* An independent monosyllable at the beginning of an hexameter, is, generally speaking, to

Reperītur aliquando spondæus etiam in quinto loco: ut,

A spondee is sometimes found in the fifth foot: as,

Cāră Dĕ|ūm sŏbŏ|lēs māg|nūm Jŏvĭs | īncrē|mēntum.[9]—VIRG.

Ultĭma cujuscunque versûs syllăba habētur commūnis.[10]

The last syllable of every verse is considered common.[10]

Versus Elegiăcus, qui et Pentamĕtri nomen habet, è duplĭci constat penthemiměri; quarum prior duos pedes, dactylĭcos, spondiăcos, vel alterūtros comprehendit, cum syllăbâ longâ; altĕra etiam duos pedes, sed omninò dactylĭcos cum syllăba item longâ: ut:

An Elegiac verse, called also a Pentameter, is composed of two penthemimers; the first containing two feet, either dactyls or spondees, and a long syllable; the second, two dactyls only and a long syllable: as,

Rēs ēst | sōllĭcĭ|tī || plēnă tĭ|mōrĭs ă|mōr.[11]—OVID.

---

be avoided: but if the word be emphatic, or mark a contrast, it is an elegance: e. gr.

Tu Marcellus eris.—VIRG. *Heu* miserande puer!
Me, me—adsum qui feci—in me convertĭte ferrum.
Bis conātus erat casus effingĕre in auro;
Bis patriæ cecidēre manus.—VIRG.

d. Monosyllables, again, at the end of a line are to be avoided; except *est* (which is frequent), or some other monosyllable beginning with a vowel, and forming an elision of the preceding word; e. gr. "putendum est,—necesse est,—Sibylla est,—locūta est." Such endings as "quibus Ităla jam tum,"—"Divum pater atque hominum rex," are sufficiently grating to the ear. But this license, if judiciously managed, is a beauty; as in the following line from Virgil:—

Sternĭtur, exanĭmisque tremens procumbit humi *bos.*

e. A word of more than three syllables should not be admitted at the close of hexameter lines (not spondaic): except it be a proper name, and occasionally a derivative, as *hymenæus*, and the oblique cases of *elĕphas*. *f.* An hexameter with many dissyllables ought generally to be avoided, as displeasing to the ear, the intermixture of dactyls and spondees contributing much to the beauty of this verse. *g.* With respect to the cæsural pause, see *Note* 7, *b*, *c*, *d*, Prosody.

[9] This is called the *Spondaic Hexameter*, of which the fourth foot should always be a dactyl.

[10] Though the last syllable of a verse be considered *common*, that is, either long or short, it must be borne in mind that the best authorities very seldom acknowledge this in hexameters, and still less frequently in pentameters.

[11] *a.* The pronoun *is* will be avoided in all cases and genders as an independent word. It may be used adjectively, and affixed to its substantive; but it must never, even in that case, be found at the end of a pentameter.

b. Adjectives, participles, adverbs, and conjunctions, are excluded from

QUANTITY OF THE FORMER SYLLABLES.

Vocālis ante duas consonantes, aut duplĭcem, in eādem dictiōne, ubíque positiōne longa est: ut, *vēntus, āxis, patrīzo.*[12]

A vowel before two consonants, or a double letter, in the same word, is long by position: as *vēntus, āxis, patrīzo.*[12]

Quòd si consŏnans priōrem dictiōnem claudat, sequente item à consonante inchoante, vocālis præcēdens etiam positiōne longa erit: ut,

If a consonant ends a word, and the next word begins with a consonant, the vowel going before is also long by position: as,

Mājōr | sūm quām | cūi pōs|sĭt fōr|tūnă nŏ|cērē.

(The syllables *jor, sum, quam,* and *sit,* are long by position.)

At si prior dictio in vocālem brevem exeat, sequente à duābus consonantĭbus incipiente, interdum, sed rariùs, producĭtur: ut,

A short vowel before the consonants *sc, sp, st,* in different words, is sometimes, though rarely, made long: as,

Occūl|tā spŏlĭ|a, ĕt plū|rĭs dē | pācĕ trĭ|ŭmphōs.[13]—Juv.

Vocālis brevis ante mutam, sequente liquĭdâ, commūnis reddĭtur: ut, *pătris, volŭcris:* longa verò non mutātur; ut, *arātrum, simulāchrum.*[14]

A short vowel before a mute and a liquid is common; as, *pătris, volŭcris:* but a vowel, naturally long, is not changed; as, *arātrum, simulāchrum.*[14]

---

forming terminations to pentameters. The exclusion of the *participle* from this place in the pentameter should be rigidly maintained.

c. The monotony occasioned by the frequent recurrence of two *a*'s, is to be avoided in the last penthemimers of pentameters.

d. A dissyllable should hold the last place in Latin pentameters. A word of four, and preferably a word of five syllables, may *occasionally* be admitted: but words of *one and of three syllables, must be absolutely excluded.*

e. A spondee, with any stop but a comma after it, at the commencement of a pentameter, connected in sense with the preceding line, and without intervening punctuation, is too rare to form a good precedent for young versifiers.—Bland's Elements of Latin Hexameters and Pentameters.

[12] Except the compounds of *jugum;* as, *bĭjugus, quadrĭjŭgus.*

[13] Examples of this kind partake too much of the nature of licenses, to be imitated by the beginner: the lengthening of a short vowel in this way is called *positio debĭlis.*

[14] It is to be observed, that only *naturally short* syllables become com-

Vocālis ante altĕram in eādem dictiōne ubíque brevis est: ut, *Dĕus, mĕus, tŭus, pĭus.*

One vowel before another in the same word is short: as, *Dĕus, mĕus, tŭus, pĭus.*

1. Excipias genitīvos in *ius*,[15] secundam pronomĭnis formam habentes; ut, *unĭus, illĭus, etc.*, ubi *i* commūnis reperītur: licèt in *alterĭus* semper sit brevis, in *alīus* semper longa.

1. Except genitive cases in *ius*;[15] as, *unĭus illĭus, etc.*, where *i* is common: but in *alterĭus* it is always short, in *alīus* always long.

2. Excipiendi sunt etiam genitīvi et datīvi quintæ declinatiōnis, ubi *e* inter gemĭnum *i* longa fit: ut, *faciēi:* aliōqui non: ut, *rĕi, spĕi, fidĕi.*[16]

2. Except likewise the genitive and dative cases of the fifth declension, where the vowel *e* between two *i's* is long: as, *faciēi:* otherwise it is short; as, *rĕi, spĕi, fidĕi.*[16]

Fi etiam in *fio* longa est, nisi sequuntur *e* et *r* simul: ut,

Fi in *fio* is long, unless followed by *e* and *r* together: as,

Fīerem, fieri.—Omnĭă jām fīūnt, fĭĕrī quæ pōssĕ nĕgābām.

Dīus primam syllăbam habet longam,[17] *Dĭāna* commūnem.

Dīus has the first syllable long,[17] *Dĭāna*, common.

Ohe, interjectio, priōrem syllăbam commūnem habet.

The interjection *ŏhe* has the first syllable common.

Vocālis ante altĕram in Græcis dictionĭbus subinde longa fit: ut, *Dicīte, Pīĕrĭdes. Respĭce Lāërten.*[18]

In Greek words, one vowel before another is sometimes long: ut, *Dicīte, Pīĕrĭdes. Respĭce Lāërten.*[18]

---

mon before a mute and a liquid; and that if the mute and the liquid belong to different syllables, as in *āb-luo, quamōb-rem*, the vowel is long by position.

[15] *Solīus, utrīus*, and *neutrīus*, are seldom considered short in the penult.

[16] Lucretius has *rēi, fidēi.*

[17] The penult of *Io* and *ēheu* likewise is long.

[18] *A* is long in the obsolete gen. of the first declension; as, *aquāi, terrāi.* Nouns in *aius* and *ēius* have *a* and *e* long in the penult of the voc. —Cāi, Pompēi.

Et in possessīvis Græcis: ut, *Ænēïa nutrix. Rhodopēïus Orpheus.*

Also in Greek possessi as, *Ænēïa nutrix. Rh pēïus Orpheus.*

Omnis diphthongus apud Latīnos longa est: ut, *aūrum, neūter, musæ:* nisi sequente vocāli; ut, *prærīre, præustus, præamplus.*[19]

Every diphthong in La long: as, *aūrum, neūter, sæ:* except when a vowe lows; as, *prærīre, præu præamplus.*[19]

Derivativa eandem ferè cum primitīvis quantitātem sortiuntur: ut, *ămātor, ămīcus, ămabĭlis,* primâ brevi ab *ămo.*[20]

Derivatives have comi ly the same quantity as thei mitives: as, *ămātor, ăm ămabĭlis,* from *ămo.*[20]

Excipiuntur tamen pauca, quæ, à brevībus deducta, primam syllăbam producunt: ut,

Except a few words, wh though derived from short lables, have the first syl long: as,

cōmo, cōmis, à *cŏma,*
fōmes, fōmentum, à *fŏveo,*
hūmānus, ab *hŏmo,*
jūcundus, à *jŭvo,*
jūmentum, à *jŭvo,*
jūnior, à *jŭvĕnis,*
lāterna, à *lăteo,*
lex, lēgis, à *lĕgo,*

mōbĭlis, à *mŏveo,*
nōnus, à *nŏvem,*
rex, rēgis, rēgīna, à *rĕgo,*
sēdes, à *sĕdeo,*
tēgŭla, à *tĕgo,*
trāgŭla, à *trăho,*
vōmer, à *vŏmo,*
vox, vōcis, à *vŏco.*

Et contrà sunt, quæ, à longis deducta, primam corripiunt: ut,

Some words, though rived from long syllables, on the other hand, made sl as,

ărēna, ărista, ărundo, ab *āreo,*
ăruspex, ab *āra,*
dĭcax, à *dīco,*
dĭtio, à *dītis,*
dĭsertus, à *dīssĕro,*
dux, dŭcis, à *dūco,*
fĭdes, à *fĭo,*
frăgor, frăgĭlis, à *frāngo,*

gĕnui, à *gīgno,*
lŭcerna, à *lūceo,*
năto, nătas, à *nātu,*
nŏto, nŏtas, à *nōtu,*
pŏsui à *pōno,*
pŏtui, à *pōssum,*
sŏpor, à *sōpio,*
with a few others.

---

[19] We may also notice an exception similar to this in Virgil, wh diphthong at the end of a word is made short, *more Græco,* before a at the beginning of the following word:—

Insŭlæ | Iŏnĭ|o īn māg|nō, quās | dīră Cĕ|lænō.

In Mœōtis, the diphthong is doubtful:—

Et Mœ̆|ōtĭcă | tēllūs.— Vīsă Mœ̆|ōtĭs hў|ēms.

[20] This rule applies to derivatives by declension, conjugation, or c

COMPOSITA simplicium quantitātem sequuntur: ut, à *lĕgo lĕgis, perlĕgo; lēgo lēgas, allēgo;* à *pŏtens, impŏtens:* à *sōlor, consōlor.*

COMPOUND words follow the quantity of their simple words: as, from *lĕgo lĕgis, perlĕgo; lēgo lēgas, allēgo; pŏtens, impŏtens; sōlor, consōlor.*

Excipiuntur tamen hæc brevia à longis enāta: *dejĕro, pejĕro,* à *jūro; innŭba, pronŭba,* à *nūbo.*

Except these words which have short syllables, though derived from long ones: as, *dejĕro, pejĕro,* from *jūro; innŭba, pronŭba,* from *nūbo.*

OMNE præterĭtum dissyllăbum priōrem habet longam: ut, *lēgi, ēmi, mōvi.*

EVERY preterperfect tense of two syllables has the first syllable long: as, *lēgi, ēmi, mōvi.*

1. Excipias tamen, *bĭbi, dĕdi, scĭdi, stĕti, stĭti, tŭli,* et *fĭdi* à *findo.*

1. Except *bĭbi, dĕdi, scĭdi, stĕti, stĭti, tŭli,* and *fĭdi* from *findo.*

2. Primam præterĭti geminantia primam brevem habent: ut, *cĕcĭdi* à *cado; cĕcīdi* à *cædo; dĭdĭci, fĕfelli, mŏmordi, pĕpendi, pŭpŭgi, tĕtendi, tĕtĭgi, tŏtondi, tŭtŭdi.*

2. Verbs doubling the first syllable of the preterperfect tense have that syllable short: as, *cĕcĭdi* from *cado; cĕcīdi* from *cædo; dĭdĭci, fĕfelli, mŏmordi, pĕpendi, pŭpŭgi, tĕtendi, tĕtĭgi, tŏtondi, tŭtŭdi.*

SUPINUM dissyllăbum priōrem habet longam: ut, *vīsum, lātum, lōtum, mōtum.*

A SUPINE of two syllables has the former syllable long: as, *vīsum, lātum, lōtum, mōtum.*

Excipe *dătum, ĭtum, lĭtum, quĭtum, rătum, rŭtum, sătum, sĭtum, stătum;* et *cĭtum* à *cieo cies;* nam *cītum* à *cio cis,* quartæ, priōrem habet longam.

Except *dătum, ĭtum, lĭtum, quĭtum, rătum, rŭtum, sătum, sĭtum, stătum;* and *cĭtum* from *cieo cies.*

---

wise: *le* is short in lĕgam, lĕgēbam, lĕgĕre, from lĕgo; but long in lēgēram, lēgissem, from lēgi: *gi* in virginĭtas is short, from virgo, virgĭnis: punio has *pu* long, because it comes from *pœna.*

QUANTITY OF THE FINAL SYLLABLE

I. *A* finīta producuntur: ut, *amā, contrā, ergā.*

I. *A* final is long: *amā, contrā, ergā.*

1. Excipias, *pută, ităquiă, posteă, ejă.* Item omnes casus in *a*, cujuscunque fuĕrint generis, numĕri, aut declinatiōnis; præter vocatīvos à Græcis in *as;* ut, *ô Ænēā, ô Thomā:* et ablatīvum primæ declinatiōnis; ut, *musā.*

1. Except *pută, ităposteă, ejă.* Likewise in *a*, of whatever gende ber, or declension: ex vocative cases of Gree in *as;* as, *ô Ænēā, ô* which are long: with t tive case of the first dec as, *musā.*

2. Numeralia in *ginta* finālem habent commūnem, sed frequentiùs longam: ut, *trigintā.*

2. Numerals in *gin* the final syllable comr more frequently long: *gintā.*

II. In *b, d, t,* desinentia, brevia sunt: ut, *ăb, ăd, capŭt.*

II. *B, d, t,* final ar as, *ăb, ăd, capŭt.*

III. In *c* desinentia producuntur: ut, *āc,*[21] *sīc,* et *hīc* adverbium.

III. *C* final is long: *sīc,* and the adverb *hī*

Sed duo in *c* corripiuntur; *nĕc* et *donĕc.*

But two words i short; *nĕc* and *donĕc.*

Tria sunt communia; *făc,* pronōmen *hĭc,* et neutrum ejus *hŏc,* modò non sit ablatīvi casûs.

Three words are c *făc,* the pronoun *hĭc,* neuter *hŏc,* when not lative case.

IV. *E* finīta brevia sunt: ut, *marĕ, penĕ, legĕ, scribĕ.*[22]

IV. *E* final is sh *marĕ, penĕ, legĕ, scri*

1. Excipiendæ sunt omnes voces quintæ inflexiōnis in *e;* ut, *fidē, diē,* unà cum particŭlis indè enātis; ut, *hodiē, quotidiē, pridiē, postridiē;* item *quarē, quadĕrē, eārē,* et si qua sunt similia.

1. Except all th of the fifth declensio as, *fidē, diē,* with the derived from it; as *quotidiē, pridiē, po* likewise *quarē, quadē* and the like.

---

[21] *Ac* is always followed by a consonant.

[22] But observe, the following word must not begin with *sc,* we find "segĕtē spicas." The adverb *temĕrè* always preced *beginning* with a vowel, long by nature or by position.

2. Et secundæ item persōnæ singulāres secundæ conjugatiōnis: ut, *docē*, *movē*.[23]

2. The second persons singular of the third conjugation have *e* long: as, *docē*, *movē*.[23]

3. Producuntur etiam monosyllăba in *e*; ut, *mē*, *tē*, *sē*: præter *quĕ*, *nĕ*, *vĕ*, conjunctiōnes enclitĭcas.[24]

3. Monosyllables in *e*, are long; as, *mē*, *tē*, *sē*, but the enclitics *quĕ*, *nĕ*, *vĕ*, are short.[24]

4. Quin et adverbia in *e*, ab adjectīvis secundæ declinatiōnis deducta, *e* longum habent: ut, *pulchrē*, *doctē*, *valdē* pro *valĭdē*.

4. Adverbs in *e*, from adjectives of the second declension, have that *e* long: as, *pulchrē*, *doctē*, *valdē* for *valĭdē*.

5. Quibus accēdunt *fermē*, *ferē*: *benĕ* tamen et *malĕ* corripiuntur omnīnò.[25]

5. To which add *fermē*, *ferē*: *benĕ* and *malĕ*, however, are always short.[25]

6. Postrēmò, quæ à Græcis per *η* scribuntur, natūrâ producuntur, cujuscunque fuĕrint casûs, genĕris, aut numĕri; ut, *Lethē*, *Anchīsē*, *cetē*, *Tempē*.

6. Such words as are written with the Greek letter *η*, are long by nature, of whatever case, gender, and number; as, *Lethē*, *Anchīsē*, *cetē*, *Tempē*.

V. *I* finīta longa sunt: ut, *domīnī*, *magistrī*, *amārī*. Præter *mihĭ*, *tibĭ*, *sibĭ*, *ubĭ*, *ibĭ*, quæ sunt communia; *nisĭ* verò et *quasĭ* corripiuntur.

V. *I* final is long: as *domĭnī*, *magistrī*, *amārī*. Except *mihĭ*, *tibĭ*, *sibĭ*, *ubĭ*, *ibĭ*, common; *nisĭ* and *quasĭ*, short.

Cujus etiam sortis sunt datīvi et vocatīvi Græcōrum, quorum genitīvus singulāris in *os* breve exit: ut, datīv. *Minoĭdĭ*, *Pallădĭ*, *Phyllĭdĭ*; vocat. *Alexĭ*, *Amaryllĭ*, *Daphnĭ*.

Greek datives aud vocatives, the genitive case singular of which ends in *os*, have *i* short: as, dat. *Minoĭdĭ*, *Pallădĭ*, *Phyllĭdĭ*; voc. *Alexĭ*, *Amaryllĭ*, *Daphnĭ*.

VI. *L* finīta corripiuntur: ut, *animăl*, *Hannibăl*, *měl*, *pugĭl*, *consŭl*.

VI. *L* final is short: as, *animăl*, *Hannibăl*, *měl*, *pugĭl*, *consŭl*.

---

[23] *Cavē*, and *vidē* in *vidēsis*, are found short.
[24] Except also the enclitics *cĕ*, *tĕ*, and *ptĕ*.
[25] *E* final in *superně* and *infernĕ* is short.

Præter *nīl* (contractum à *nihil*,) *sāl*, et *sōl*: et Hebræa quædam in *el*: ut, *Michaēl*, *Gabrīēl*, *Raphaēl*, *Danīēl*.

Except *nīl* (a contraction from *nihil*), *sāl* and *sōl*, long: and certain Hebrew words in *el*; as, *Michaēl*, *Gabrīēl*, *Raphaēl*, *Danīēl*.

VII. N finīta producuntur: ut, *Pæān*, *Hymēn*, *quīn*, *Xenŏphōn*, *nōn*, *dæmōn*.

VII. *N* final is long: as, *Pæān*, *Hymēn*, *quīn*, *Xenŏphōn*, *nōn*, *dæmōn*.

Excĭpe, *forsăn*, *forsĭtăn*, *ăn*, *tamĕn*, *attămĕn*, *veruntămĕn*, et *ĭn*.

Except *forsăn*, *forsĭtăn*, *ăn*, *tamĕn*, *attămĕn*, *veruntămĕn*, and *ĭn*.

Accēdunt his et voces illæ, quæ apocŏpen patiuntur: ut, *vidĕn'? audĭn'?* etiam *exĭn*, *subĭn*, *dein*, *proin*.

Except also those words which admit the figure apocope: as *vidĕn'? audĭn'?* etiam *exĭn*, *subĭn*, *dein*, *proin*.

In *an* quoque à nominatīvis in *a*: ut, nom. *Iphigenīa*, *Ægīna*; accus. *Iphigenĭān*, *Ægīnān*. Nam in *an* à nominatīvis in *as* producuntur: ut, nom. *Ænēas*, *Marsyas*; accus. *Ænēān*, *Marsyān*.

Nouns in *an*, from nominative cases in *a*, are also short: as, nom. *Iphigenīa*, *Ægīna*; acc. *Iphigenĭān*, *Ægīnān*: nouns in *an* from nominative cases in *as* being long; as, nom. *Ænēas*, *Marsyas*; acc. *Ænēān*, *Marsyān*.

Nomĭna item in *en*, quorum genitīvus *ĭnis* correptum habet: ut, *carmĕn*, *crimĕn*, *pectĕn*, *tibīcĕn*, *-ĭnis*.

En, making in the genitive case *ĭnis*, is short: as, *carmĕn*, *crimĕn*, *pectĕn*, *tibīcĕn*, *-ĭnis*.

Quædam etiam in *in* per *i*, ut, *Alexĭn*; et in *yn*, per *y*, ut, *Itŷn*.

Some nouns also ending in *in* with an *i*, as, *Alexĭn*; and *yn* with a *y*, as, *Itŷn*.

Græca etiam in *ov* per *o* parvum, cujuscunque fuĕrint casûs: ut, nom. *Iliŏn*, *Peliŏn*; accus. *Caucăsŏn*, *Pylŏn*.

Greek words in *ov*, of whatever case: as, nom. *Iliŏn*, *Peliŏn*; acc. *Caucăsŏn*, *Pylŏn*.

VIII. *O* finīta communia sunt: ut, *dicŏ*, *virgŏ*, *porrŏ*: Sic *docendŏ*, *legendŏ*, et alia gerundia in *do*.[26]

VIII. *O* final is common: as, *dicŏ*, *virgŏ*, *porrŏ*: so *docendŏ*, *legendŏ*, and other gerunds in *do*.[26]

[26] But the usage of *o* final should make it, in preference, long—with these special exceptions, *Nesciŏ*, *citŏ*, *ambŏ*, *modŏ*, *duŏ*, *egŏ*, *homŏ*, *cedŏ* (*in the sense of* dic or da), *illicŏ*.

Sed oblīqui casus in *o* semper producuntur: ut, dat. *dŏmĭnō, servō*; ablat. *templō, damnō*.

But oblique cases in *o* are always long: as, dat. *dŏmĭnō, servō*; ablat. *templō, damnō*.

Et adverbia ab adjectīvis derivāta: *tantō, quantō, liquĭdō, falsō, primō, manifestō, etc.*: Præter *sedŭlŏ, mutuŏ, crebrŏ*, quæ sunt communia: cetĕrùm *modŏ* et *quomŏdŏ* semper corripiuntur.

Adverbs, derived from adjectives, are long: *tantō, quantō, liquĭdō, falsō, primō, manifestō, etc.*: but *sedŭlŏ, mutuŏ, crebrŏ*, are common: *modŏ* and *quomŏdŏ*, always short.

Citŏ quoque, ut et *amblŏ, duŏ, egŏ*, atque *homŏ*, vix leguntur producta.

Citŏ also, with *amblŏ, duŏ, egŏ*, and *homŏ*, are scarcely ever read long.

Monosyllăba tamen in *o* producuntur: ut, *dō, stō*.

Monosyllables in *o* are long: as, *dō, stō*.

Item Græca per *ω*, cujusmŏdi fuĕrint casûs: ut, nom. *Sapphō, Didō*; gen. *Androgeō, Apollō*; accus. *Athō, Apollō*: sic et *ergō* pro *causâ*.

Likewise Greek words in *ω*, of whatever case: as, nom. *Sapphō, Didō*; gen. *Androgeō, Apollō*; accus. *Athō, Apollō*: so *ergō*, when used for *causâ*.

IX. *R* finīta corripiuntur: ut, *Cæsăr, pĕr, vĭr, uxŏr, turtŭr*.

IX. *R* final is short: as, *Cæsăr, pĕr, vĭr, uxŏr, turtŭr*.

Producuntur autem, *fār, Lār, Nār, vēr, fūr, cūr*; *pār* quoque, cum compositis, ut *compār, impār, dispār*.

But these are long, *fār, Lār, Nār, vēr, fūr, cūr*; and *par*, with its compounds, as *compār, impār, dispār*.

Græca etiam in *er*, quæ illis in *ηρ* desĭnunt: ut, *aĕr, cratĕr, characterr, æthĕr, sotĕr*: præter *patĕr* et *matĕr*, quæ apud Latīnos ultĭmam brevem habent.

Also Greek words in *er* (*ηρ*); as, *aĕr, cratĕr, characterr, æthĕr, sotĕr*: but *patĕr* and *matĕr* are short in Latin.

X. S finīta pares cum numĕro vocalium habent terminatiōnes: nempè, *as, es, is, os, us*.

X. Words ending in *s* have the like terminations with the number of the vowels; namely, *as, es, is, os, us*.

I. *As* finīta producuntur: ut, *amās*, *musās*, *majestās*, *bonĭtās*.

Præter Græca, quorum genitīvus singulāris in *dos* exit: ut, *Arcās*, *Pallās*; genitīvo, *Arcădos*, *Pallădos*: et præter accusatīvos plurāles nominum crescentium: ut, *heros*, *herōos*, *Phyllis*, *Phyllĭdos*; accus. plur. *herōās*, *Phyllĭdăs*.

II. *Es* finīta longa sunt; ut, *Anchīsēs*, *sedēs*, *docēs*, *patrēs*.

1. Excipiuntur nomĭna in *es*, tertiæ inflexiōnis, quæ penultĭmam genitīvi crescentis corripiunt: ut, *milĕs*, *segĕs*, *divĕs*. Sed *ariēs*, *abiēs*, *pariēs*, *Cerēs*, et *pēs*, unà cum compositis, ut *bipēs*, *tripēs*, longa sunt.

2. *Es* quoque à *sum*, unà cum compositis, corripĭtur: ut, *potĕs*, *adĕs*, *prodĕs*, *obĕs*: quibus *penĕs* adjungi potest.

3. Item neutra, et nominatīvi plurāles Græcōrum: ut, *hippomănēs*, *cacoēthēs*, *Cyclōpĕs*, *Naïădĕs*.

III. *Is* finīta brevia sunt: ut, *Parĭs*, *panĭs*, *tristĭs*, *hilărĭs*.

1. Excĭpe oblīquos casus plurāles in *is*, qui producuntur: ut, *musīs*, *mensīs* à *mensa*, *domĭnīs*, *templīs*; et *quīs* pro *quibus*: item producentia penultĭmam genitīvi crescentis: ut, *Samnīs*, *Saldmīs*; *genitīvo*, *Samnītis*, *Salamīnis*.

I. *As* final is long: as, *amās*, *musās*, *majestās*, *bonĭtās*.

But Greek nouns in *as* making *dos* in the genitive, are short: as, *Arcās*, *Pallās*; gen. *Arcădos*, *Pallădos*; likewise the accusative plural of nouns increasing: as, *heros*, *herōos*, *Phyllis*, *Phyllĭdos*; acc. plural, *herōās*, *Phyllĭdăs*.

II. *Es* final is long: as, *Anchīsēs*, *sedēs*, *docēs*, *patrēs*.

1. Except nouns in *es* of the third declension, increasing short in the gen. case singular; as, *milĕs*, *segĕs*, *divĕs*: but *ariēs*, *abiēs*, *pariēs*, *Cerēs*, and *pēs*, with its compounds, as *bipēs*, *tripēs*, are long.

2. *Es*, from *sum*, with its compounds, is short: as, *potĕs*, *adĕs*, *prodĕs*, *obĕs*: to which add *penĕs*.

3. Greek neuters, and the nom. plural of Greek nouns in *ĕs*, are also short: as, *hippomănĕs*, *cacoēthĕs*, *Cyclōpĕs*, *Naïădĕs*.

III. *Is* final is short: as, *Parĭs*, *panĭs*, *tristĭs*, *hilărĭs*.

1. Except oblique cases plural in *is*, which are long: as, *musīs*, *mensīs* (from *mensa*), *domĭnīs*, *templīs*; and *quīs* for *quibus*: also nouns in *is*, increasing long in the genitive singular; as, *Samnīs*, *Saldmīs*; gen. *Samnītis*, *Salamīnis*.

ıdde huc quæ in *is* con- ex *eis* desĭnunt, sive sive Latīna, cujuscun- ırint numĕri aut casûs: ōīs, *Pyroīs, partīs, om- Simoeis, Pyroeis, par- meis.*

2. Words in *is* contracted from *eis*, whether Greek or Latin, are long; as, *Simoīs, Pyroīs, partīs, omnīs;* from *Simoeis, Pyroeis, parteis, omneis.*

Et monosyllăba item ut, *vīs, līs:* præter *ĭs* ıominatīvos, et *bĭs* apud m.

3. Monosyllables in *is* are long; as, *vīs, līs:* but *ĭs* and *quĭs* in the nom., and *bĭs* in Ovid, are short.

ıtis accēdunt secundæ ı singulāres verbōrum in rum secundæ persōnæ ı desĭnunt in *ītis*, pe- ı productâ; unà cum subjunctīvi in *ris:* ut, *velīs, dedĕrīs;* plural, *velītis, dederītis.*

4. To these are added the second persons singular of verbs making *ītis* in the plural number: as, *audīs, velīs dedĕrīs;* plural, *audītis, velītis, dederītis.*

Os finīta producuntur: ōs, *nepōs, domĭnōs, ser-*

IV. *Os* final is long: as, *honōs, nepōs, domĭnōs, servōs.*

er *compŏs, impŏs, et ŏs* t Græca per *o* parvum: ŏs, *Chaŏs, Pallădŏs,* ŏs.

But *compŏs, impŏs, and ŏs ossis*, are short: and all Greek words with a little *o*: as, *Delŏs, Chaŏs, Pallădŏs, Phyllidŏs.*

Us finīta corripiuntur: ıŭlŭs, *regiŭs, tempŭs,* ıs.

V. *Us* final is short: as, *famŭlus, regiŭs, tempŭs, amāmŭs.*

piuntur producentia pe- ım genitīvi crescentis: ıs, *tellūs;* genitīvo *salūıris:* longæ sunt etiam voces quartæ inflecn *us*, præter nomina- et vocatīvum singuıt, gen. sing. *manūs;* ıcus. voc. plur. *manūs.*

Except nouns increasing long in the genitive case singular: as, *salūs, tellūs;* gen., *salūtis, tellūris:* with the genitive singular, the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases plural of the fourth declension: as, *manūs.*

His accēdunt etiam monosyllăba: ut, *crūs*, *thūs*, *mūs*, *sūs*: et Græca item per ꝏ diphthongum, cujuscunque fuĕrint casūs: ut, nom. *Panthūs*, *Melampūs*; gen. *Sapphūs*, *Cliūs*.

Monosyllables in *us* are long: as, *crūs*, *thūs*, *mūs*, *sūs*: and Greek words ending with the diphthong ꝏ, of whatever case: as, nom., *Panthūs*, *Melampūs*; gen., *Sapphūs*, *Cliūs*.

Atque piis cunctis venerandum nomen Iꝏsus.

XI. Postrēmò *u* finīta producuntur omnia: ut, *manū*, *genū*, *amātū*, *diū*.[27]

XI. *U* final is long: as, *manū*, *genū*, *amātu*, *diū*.[27]

---

[27] *Y* final, which occurs only in Greek words, is always short. *Ys* also is short; except in those words which have *ys* for the acc. singular, as, *Trachys*.

A LATIN PRAXIS.

I.—On Declension.

Of, before a substantive, is the sign of a Latin genitive. *To* and *for* are signs of the dative: *in*, *with*, *from*, *by*, of the ablative: *o* is the sign of the vocative case.

The English articles *a*, *an*, *the*, are not rendered in Latin: thus, man, *a* man, *the* man, may all be made Latin by one word,—*homo*; of man, of *a* man, of *the* man, by the genitive, *hominis*, *etc.*

a. The nom. and acc. cases, being without signs, are noted in the Praxis, the former by *n*, the latter by *a*.—*b*. *Hic*, *hæc*, *hoc*, as the marks of gender, may be omitted, or expressed, at the pleasure of the master; though the application of them is strongly advised. *c*. The ending of the nom. case is marked in Italics, to show that it is changed in the genitive to the ending which follows: thus, poēt*a*-æ, means nom. *poēta*, gen. *poētæ*; Apollo-ĭnis, means nom. *Apollo*, gen. *Apollĭnis*. The mark of the gen. being given, the declension of the noun is easily found; thus, *æ* being the mark of the first declension, poēta, gen. poētæ, is therefore said to be of the first declension; and so in other instances. If, on the contrary, the ending of the nom. is *not* in Italics, either the gen. is the same as the nom.; as "Aprīlis" denotes nom. *Aprīlis*, gen. *Aprīlis*: or the ending which follows is added; as puer-i, *i. e.* nom. *puer*, gen. *puĕri*. This arrangement has been adopted, to do away with the use of a Dictionary in the Praxis; and to make the learner rely on the knowledge he has acquired from his Grammar. The Rules of Gender must be applied to every noun.

I. The General Rules of Gender.—1. The names of *males*, *rivers*, *winds*, and *months*, are *masculine*.

Praxis.—A poet *a*, poēt*a*-æ; of George, Georgi*us*-i; for Cicero, Cicĕro-ōnis; to the master, magist*er*-ri; a scribe *a*, scrib*a*-æ; o son, fili*us*-i; by the consul, cons*ul*-ŭlis; with Mars, Mar*s*-tis; by Apollo, Apollo-ĭnis; for the Tiber, Tib*er*-ĕris; by the (river) Orontes, Oront*es*-is; to the south-wind, not*us*-i; from the south-wind, aust*er*-ri; in April, Aprīlis;

December *a*, Decem*ber*-bris; boys *n*, pu*er*-ĕri; of kings, re*x*-gis; for shepherds, pas*tor*-ōris; to the gods, de*us*-i.

2. The names of *females, towns, countries, islands, and trees*, are *feminine*.

The queen *a*, regī*na*-æ; from daughters, fili*a*-æ; for Anne, Ann*a*-æ; of girls, puell*a*-æ; in Rome, Rom*a*-æ; to Italy, Ital*ia*-æ; of Cyprus, Cypr*us*-i; of virgins, virg*o*-ĭnis; women *n*, fœmĭn*a*-æ; cedar-trees *n*, cedr*us*-i; in Britain, Britann*ia*-æ; Persia *a*, Pers*is*-ĭdis; by Juno, Jun*o*-ōnis; for goddesses,[1] de*a*-æ; the cypress-tree *a*, cupress*us*-i; by freedwomen,[1] liber*ta*-æ.

3. Nouns applied both to *males and females* are *common*.

Of a parent, paren*s*-tis; the enemy *a*, hōstis; for old men, sen*ex*-is; of youths, juvĕnis; with a leader, du*x*-ucis; companions *n*, come*s*-ĭtis; to hostages, obse*s*-ĭdis; of oxen, bo*s*-vis.

Note.— The Special Rules do not interfere with, or supersede, the application of the General Rules.

II. First Special Rule.—Nouns *not increasing* in the genitive case singular are *feminine*.

By learning, doctrī*na*-æ; in the school, schol*a*-æ; lives *a*, vit*a*-æ; of clouds, nub*es*-is; for hunger, fam*es*-is; destruction *a*, clad*es*-is; in cottages, cas*a*-æ; by rocks, rup*es*-is; with flesh, car*o*-nis; from the bakehouse, pīstrill*a*-æ; for diligence, diligenti*a*-æ; a letter *a*, epistŏl*a*-æ; with force, vis.

But these, amongst other nouns, are *masculine:* nouns in *er* and *us; collis, mensis, ensis, ignis, orbis, cometa, postis:* and these are *neuter;* nouns in *um* and *on*, with nouns in *e* genitive *is*.

In a field, ag*er*-ri; with books, lib*er*-ri; games *n*, lud*us*-i; of fire, ignis; to a sword, ensis; of wars, bell*um*-i; the wind *a*, vent*us*-i; for comets, comēt*a*-æ; in the world, orbis; nets *n*, rete-is; a lute *a*, barbĭt*on*-i; for empires, imperi*um*-i; of hills, collis; to the eyes, ocŭl*us*-i; a door-post *a*, postis; from months, mensis.

III. Second Special Rule.—Nouns are *feminine*, which take the accent on the *penult* of the genitive case increasing.

Virtues *n*, virt*us*-ūtis; of the laws, le*x*-gis; for piety, piĕt*as*-ātis; crosses *a*, cru*x*-ucis; in summer, æst*as*-ātis; with disputes, li*s*-tis; snow *a*, ni*x*-vis; by goodness, bonĭt*as*-ātis; in youth, juvent*us*-ūtis; of things, re*s*-i; for lessons, lectiōnis.

But these nouns, amongst others, are *masculine: sol, pes,*

[1] See *Note* 10, Accidence.

ions, fons, sermo; dens and *as*, with their compounds; polysyllables in *n* and *ens;* the names of substances in *o;* with ouns in *er, or,* and *os.*

The teeth *a*, dens-tis; with honour, hon*os*-ōris; of mountains, mons-tis; for a discourse, sermo-ōnis; of flowers, flos-s; a bowl *a*, crat*er*-ēris;[2] by a fountain, fons-tis; the milt *a*, *ex*-ēnis; with the feet, pes-dis; in the east, orien*s*-tis; the umber six *a*, senio-ōnis; from the sun, sol-is; nine ounces *a*, odran*s*-tis; with pain, dol*or*-ōris.

These nouns are *neuter:* polysyllables in *al* and *ar; lac, ar, cor, rus, jus, crus.*

In the country, rus-ris; bee-hives *n*, alve*ar*-āris; of the leg, rus-ris; of rights, jus-ris; in the spring, ver-is; the hearts, ar-dis; with a priest's veil, capĭt*al*-ālis; milk *a*, lac-tis; from ne roof, laque*ar*-āris.

IV. Third Special Rule.—Nouns are *masculine*, which ake the accent on the *antepenult* of the genitive case increasng.

Of a log, stip*es*-ĭtis; in blood, sangu*is*-ĭnis; whirlpools *a*, arg*es*-ĭtis; of ashes, cin*is*-ĕris; with a stone, lap*is*-ĭdis; a urf *a*, cæsp*es*-ĭtis; from the wall, pari*es*-ētis; in whirlwinds, urbo-ĭnis.

Hyperdissyllables in *do-dĭnis*, and in *go-gĭnis*, are *feminine;* lso nouns in *as* and *is* from the Greek; with *grando, fides, ages, arbor, hyems, supellex, chlamys.*

With an image, imāgo-ĭnis; fear *a*, formīdo-ĭnis; of trees, rb*or*-ŏris; in winter, hy*ems*-ĕmis; with lamps, lamp*as*-ădis; or a helmet, cass*is*-ĭdis; to faith, fid*es*-ēi; household stuff *a*, upell*ex*-ectĭlis; of mantles, chlam*ys*-ўdis.

These words are *neuter:* nouns in *a, en, ar, put, ur, us; uber, gingiber, œquor, verber, iter, ador, etc.*

For works, op*us*-ĕris; from the head, cap*ut*-ĭtis; journeys *n*, *er*-ĭnĕris; to the liver, jec*ur*-ŏris or-ĭnŏris; in a sunbeam, ib*ar*-ăris: with stripes, verb*er*-ĕris; smooth surfaces *a*, æquŏr-ris; in poems, poēm*a*-ătis.

The Substantive and the Adjective.

Rule. Adjectīva, participia,—Adjectives, participles, &c.

Every adjective is joined to the substantive it qualifies, in he same relations of gender, number, and case: as, *bonus uer*, a good boy; the substantive *puer* being in the masculine

[2] The Greek acc. *cratēra.* See *Greek nouns*, &c., page 9.

gender, singular number, and nom. case, the adjective *bonus*, because it *qualifies* "puer," takes the *same gender*, *number*, *and case*.

To know one's own language grammatically, is the best key to the study of a foreign language; for by comparing the two where they agree, and contrasting them where they differ, they both become more firmly impressed upon the mind. In translating English into Latin, therefore, it is always proper for the pupil to understand and be able to parse the English, before he even attempt to render the same into Latin. He should ascertain from the meaning of the words of his own language, first, —what part of speech they are (and if necessary parse them); secondly,— the Latin words answering respectively to each of them; and thirdly,—let him apply the Latin Rule.

PRAXIS—Of good boys, bon*us*-a, um, puer-ī; great errors *n*, magn*us*-a, um, err*or*-ōris; destructive wars *a*, exitiōs*us*-a, um, bell*um*-i; to a free people, lib*er*-ĕra, ĕrum, popŭl*us*-i; by those laws, *is*, ea, id, le*x*-gis; of the most noble men, nobĭl*is*-e, homo-ĭnis; no private letters *n*, null*us*-a, um, privāt*us*-a, um, epistŏl*a*-æ; the more careful husbandman *a*, dilĭgen*s*-tis, agricŏl*a*-æ; a more wonderful accident *n*, mirifĭc*us*-a, um, cas*us*-ûs; of all those actions, omn*is*-e, *is*-ea, id, fact*um*-i; to this one disgrace, *hic*, hæc, hoc, un*us*-a, um, dedĕc*us*-ŏris.

II. ON CONJUGATION.

The pronoun *ego*, I, is of the first person singular; *tu*, thou, of the second person; *ille* he, *illa* she, *illud* it, of the third person singular: *nos*, we, is of the first person plural; *vos*, ye or you, of the second person; *illi*, *illæ*, *illa*, they, of the third person plural.

All substantives are of the third person, singular or plural: except the vocative case, which is of the second person.

To, before a verb, is the sign of a Latin infinitive.

Of, before a participle, is a sign of the gerund in *di*; *in*, of the gerund in *do*.

These pronouns, *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *we*, *ye* or *you*, *they*, and the Latin words, *ego*, *tu*, *etc.*, which answer to them, are used as nom. cases or subjects; and the verb, joined to either of them, must be put in the same person and number as the pronoun which it follows: thus, *ego amo*, I love; *amo* is of the first person, singular number, simply because its subject *amo* is of that person and number. But it should be observed, that, in Latin, the verb in a finite mood always expresses, by its form or ending, some one of the persons—independently of its own signification: thus, *amo*, though only one word, is tantamount to *I* love, *I do* love, or, *I am* loving: *amābam*, to *I did* love, or, *I was* loving; *amābas*, *thou didst* love, &c. This is the reason why the Latin pronouns are so often

omitted without any injury to the sense. Now every sentence or proposition must contain one subject, and one predicate or thing affirmed of the subject; and hence it is, that every Latin finite verb, from including within itself both subject and predicate, makes one sentence: for *amāvi*, being in signification the same as *I have loved*, is of itself a proposition. These remarks seem necessary to prepare the beginner for exemplifying a Rule of Syntax, in what he might otherwise consider merely the Accidence of Grammar.

Rule. Verbum personāle,—A verb personal, &c.

First Conjugation.—As in the present tense forms the preterperfect in *avi*, and the supine in *atum*.

Praxis.—Thou callest, *voco;* we did think, *cogĭto;* ye loved, *amo;* they may carry, *porto;* judge ye, *judico;* I have supped, *cœno;* ye will love, *amo;* they shall have hoped, *spero;* in supposing, *puto;* he would have built, *ædifĭco;* let him consider, *considĕro;* let us doubt, *dubĭto;* they may have asked, *rogo;* of judging, *judĭco;* relating, *narro;* to have called back, *revŏco;* to swim, *no*.

Yet there are a few exceptions, partly in the perfect, and partly in the supine.

I have washed, *lavo;* we had helped, *juvo;* to have glittered, *mico;* they may have killed, *neco;* we shall have given, *do;* ye had tamed, *domo;* thou shouldst have forbidden, *veto;* he might have sounded, *sono;* ye folded, *plico;* we stood, *sto;* they have rubbed, *frico*.

Second Conjugation.—Es in the present tense forms the preterperfect in *ui*, and the supine in *itum;* to which there are many exceptions.

I did have, *habeo;* thou hast advised, *moneo;* see thou, *video;* he may hold, *teneo;* I grieved, *doleo;* to have hurt, *noceo;* ye shall have hindered, *prohibeo;* they will sit, *sedeo;* it burns, *ardeo;* they may have bitten, *mordeo;* urge ye, *urgeo;* he laughed, *rideo;* thou shalt have beckoned, *niveo*.

The Third Conjugation is formed variously, both in the preterperfect tense, and in the supine.

He spoke, *dico;* it grows, *cresco;* let him drink, *bibo;* we have fallen, *cado;* they will desire, *cupio;* in believing, *credo;* he has thrown, *jacio;* they were feeding, *pasco;* he conquered, *vinco;* he may have commanded, *mando;* he shall have fallen, *cadŏ;* ye had joined, *jungo;* let them permit, *sino;* of planting, *sero;* say thou, *dico;* do thou, *facio;* ye might resolve, *statuo;* they turned, *verto;* let him learn, *disco;* to write, *scribo;* ye might have carried, *veho;* we discerned, *cerno;* they have set in order, *sera*.

Fourth Conjugation.—*Is* in the present tense forms the preterperfect in *ivi*, and the supine in *itum*; with a few exceptions.

Let him know, *scio*; they were hearing, *audio*; sleep they, *dormio*; ye should have guarded, *custodio*; in dividing, *partio*; he will feel disgust, *fastidio*; to fortify, *munio*; going, *eo*; he shall polish, *polio*; you were prating, *garrio*; ye may finish, *finio*; thou mightst have clothed, *amicio*; draw water, *haurio*; we shall have buried, *sepelio*; he has been sold, *veneo*; ye came, *venio*; let them feel, *sentio*; thou couldst have bound, *vincio*.

Conjugation of Verbs Passive and Deponent.—Note. The form of a deponent verb is passive, but its signification is active.

I was loved, *amor*; let me be ruled, *regor*; they lay waste, *popŭlor*; thou wilt be taught, *doceor*; be ye despised, *contemnor*; we may be thought, *putor*; have pity, *misereor*; he could have been separated, *sejungo*; ye shall have confessed, *confiteor*; he has acquired, *adipiscor*; I was tired, *fatigor*; in promising, *polliceor*; ye might have been cut off, *rescindor*; they can be answered, *respondeor*; you may have forgotten, *obliviscor*; I used, *utor*; they shall have been left, *relinquor*; ye will be reckoned, *existĭmor*; thou mayst be conquered, *vincor*; they shared, *partior*; he gave liberally, *largior*; you shall obtain power, *potior*; she began, *ordior*; let me be heard, *audior*; he was frightened, *terreor*; thou hast been bitten, *mordeor*; it arose, *orior*; it was building, *ædĭficor*.

RULES OF CONSTRUCTION;

OR,

General Rules for Construing Latin and English.

A sentence is a series of words, so arranged as to express meaning: as, *Alexander vicit Darium*, Alexander conquered Darius.

Every sentence, however short, must contain two principal ideas; one of the subject, and one of the predicate.

The subject of a sentence is that of which any thing is said: as, *Alexander*, in the above sentence. It is usually a nomi-

native case; but, when the verb is an infinitive, an accusative.

The predicate is that which is said or predicated of the subject: as, *vicit*, in the sentence, *Alexander vicit Darīum*. It may be a verb in a simple or compound tense; as, *sol ardet*, the sun is hot; *milĭtes occīsi sunt*, the soldiers have been slain: or a verb with an adjective or a substantive referring to the same subject; as, *pii orant tacĭti; ira furor est*, anger is a madness.

A sentence having but one subject and one predicate is called a simple sentence.

A compound sentence consists of two or more simple sentences, which are sometimes called members, or clauses: thus, the part of a sentence which contains the relative, is named the *relative clause*.

The Construction and Arrangement of words in a sentence, chiefly according to their Accidence, is denominated Syntax.

Syntax is divided into two main branches:—

1. Concord, when one declined word is joined to another in the same relations.

2. Government, or the influence of one word in directing the Accidence of another.

The pupil, in beginning to construe, cannot be made to rely too little on his Dictionary, nor too much on his Grammar, his memory, and his judgment. At this early stage, perhaps the only proper guide in Latin construing, is the form or ending of the declined words. He may now be told more explicitly, that the declined words are only four,—namely, the noun, pronoun, participle, and verb; that there is a similarity of form between the first three, but that the endings of the verb are, for the most part, quite different from those of the noun, pronoun, and participle; that this difference makes the verb, of all words, most easy to be distinguished; and that hence the verb may be generally known by inspection or at first sight, even by the learner. On this difference, is founded a plain and very obvious direction,—though the subject, or nom. case, is always *first construed*, yet the verb, as being more prominent, must be *first found out*. When all this has been fully explained, not only *by* the master, but *to* the master by the pupil himself, the latter may proceed at once to the analysis of simple sentences; and the structure of these being understood, scarcely any difficulty will be experienced in the solution of a compound sentence.

In a Latin sentence, the actual order of words frequently differs from the order in which they are construed into English.

Thus, whether we say, *Alexander vicit Darīum*, or *Darīum vicit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darīum vicit*, the meaning is one and the same; and if we say, "Alexander conquered

Darius," we state the fact as it is expressed in the above sentence: but if we alter the order and say, "Darius conquered Alexander," we affirm the very reverse; and if we say "Alexander Darius conquered," or "Darius Alexander conquered," we state an ambiguous proposition.

Before construing a Latin sentence, ascertain first the predicate (the *verb* of the predicate) by its form or ending, and then its nominative case or subject.

The Subject and the Predicate.

Rules.—Verbum personāle,—Nominatīvus pronomĭnum, &c.

— A verb personal, —The nominative case of pronouns, &c.

Construe first the subject, and then the predicate: as, ludunt puĕri; *puĕri* the boys, *ludunt* play.

Illustration.—Take the simple sentence "ludunt puĕri," as an example, and let the pupil be told to find out the verb by its form and ending, and then its English, conjugation, &c.; and he must be a dull boy who will not fix upon *ludunt*, by the termination *unt*; "ludunt," then, being a verb, and all verbs ending in *o* or in *or*, ludo is easily traced as the root-tense of lud*unt*; and, by consulting the Dictionary, as being of the 3rd conjugation, and signifying "to play." He next refers to his Grammar, and there discovers it to be, like *regunt*, of the indicative mood, present tense, third person, plural number. He then proceeds to "puĕri," which, as it *governs* "ludunt" in number and person, he knows is in the plural number and third person; he knows also that it is in the nom. case: but if he has not met with the word before, he will be ignorant of its English, &c. The Dictionary offers no clue until he knows the nom. singular, and "puĕri" is in the plural number. The ending therefore *(i)* can alone guide him, as in the previous instance: he refers, *memorĭter* if he is able, to one of the five forms of declension, and, after a little thought, soon traces its resemblance to *domĭni* and *magistri*, nom. plural; and as domĭni comes from dŏmĭnus, and magistri from magister, "puĕri" must likewise come from puer or puĕrus. A reference to the Dictionary points out *puer* as the nom. sought for, and as being of the 2nd declension, and meaning "a boy"—and by joining the two words and construing them, the pupil translates them according to Rule,—*puĕri* boys, *ludunt* play. Some such process as this, tedious as it may appear at first, must be undergone by the mind of every one in learning the Latin, or any other transpositive language,—neither by the rote-system, nor by the help of translations.

Lesson.—Ego moneo. Rex regit. Audivĭmus. Amat pater. Canis currit. Labor vincit. Crescit amor. Spes est. (*Hope is*; or, according to the English idiom, *there is hope.*) Doceat præceptor. Lynx fugit. Venit hyems. Lex permīsit (from permitto). Fatigātur equus. Fabŭla narrātur. Datæ sunt leges. Premerētur caseus. Superbus contemnātur. Præmia dentur. Laudātor industria. Victus sit miles. Stanto.

The Substantive, the Adjective, and the Predicate.

Rule.—Adjectīva, participia,—Adjectives, participles, &c.

Construe the adjective with the substantive it qualifies: as, "dira parantur bella;" *dira bella* dreadful wars, *parantur* are prepared,—not *dira* dreadful, *bella* wars: leges *justæ*, et *inviolātæ*, just and unviolated laws. (The adjectives are marked in Italics.)

Lesson.—*Bonus* puer discit. Puĕri *mali* punientur. Vēnit *acris* hyems. Rosa *pulchra* cadit. Fūgit lynx *maculōsa*. Nemus *omne* virēbit. Restat *unum* dedĕcus. Fraus *nulla* profertur. Mare furit *tumĭdum*. Præceptōres *nostri* veniunt. Venit æstas *torrĭda*. Lex *ea* jubet. *Fugāces* labuntur anni. Fūgit lynx *velox* et *maculōsa*. Libri *utiles* et *ingeniōsi* legentur. Bellum sævit *anceps* et *lethāle*. *Omnis* exercĭtus *noster* interiit. Quercus *aëria*, *patŭla*, et *glandifĕra* nutat.

Rules.—Quùm duo substantīva,—Duo substantīva rei, &c.—When two substantives,—Two substantives respecting the same thing, &c.

Sometimes a nominative, and sometimes a genitive case depend on the subject, and are construed immediately after it: as, vivit Victoria, regīna; *Victoria*, *regīna* the queen, *vivit* lives: "Crescit amor nummi;" *amor* the love, *nummi* of money, *crescit* increases. (The latter substantive and the word in apposition are in Italics.)

Lesson.—Vicit Tarquinius, *rex* septĭmus. Magna vis est *conscientiæ*.[1] Missus est consul, *vir* fortissĭmus. Libertas agĭtur *populi* Romāni. *Corpŏris* infirmĭtas retardāvit. *Virtūtis* præmia manent. Usus *pecuniæ* nullus est. Ingentes *Gallōrum* copiæ transiērunt. Effodiuntur opes, *irritamenta malōrum*. Vincet amor *patriæ laudum*que immensa cupīdo. *Agrōrum* viridantium color delectat.

The Subject, the Predicate, and the Object.

Rule.—Verba transitīva,—Verbs transitive, &c.

Construe the object immediately after the verb which governs it: as, "Orbem Deus ipse gubernat;" *Deus ipse* God himself, *gubernat* governs, *orbem* the world. (The object is in Italics.)

---

[1] In this example, "magna est" form the predicate, and are therefore construed *after* "vis conscientiæ:" the Rule of Syntax for "magna" following "est" is, *Item omnia ferè verba,—Almost all verbs, &c.*

Percontatōrem fugĭto. Virtus conservat *amicitiam*. Vitium *vitam* ipsam molestam effĭcit. Fundit humus *flores*. Unam ducĭmus *cohortem*. *Ludos* Romānos instituit Priscus Tarquinius. Hic multa reparāvit *bella*. *Arma*, *virum*que cano. Dido *Carthagĭnem* condĭdit. *Gramĭna* carpit equus. *Omnia* vincit amor. Sol aureus regit *mundum*. Tuas *lĭtĕras* accēpi. Furor *arma* ministrat. Nauta videt *mare* tumĭdum.

In construing a compound sentence, divide it into the several members or clauses of which it consists; and then proceed as in simple sentences.

The above Rules for Construing are included in this

General Rule.—1. Construe first the subject, with the words (if any) thereto belonging; secondly, the predicate, with the word or words governed by it; lastly, the preposition (if any), with its dependent case. "Copias suas Cæsar in proxĭmum collem subduxit;" *Cæsar*, the Roman general, *subduxit* withdrew, *copias suas* his forces, *in proxĭmum collem* to the next hill.

Note.—If the subject is not expressed, a pronoun must be supplied in English; and the verb, when understood, must be supplied either from an adjoining clause, or from some tense of the verb *sum*.

Rule 2.—An adjective or a participle, when it forms no part of the predicate and governs no word, is construed *before* its noun; as "Nox atra venit,"—*nox atra* black night, *venit* comes. Otherwise it is construed *after* the noun; as, "Conscia mens recti,"—*mens* a mind, *conscia* conscious, *recti* of right.

Rule 3.—So when two or more adjectives qualify the same noun, they are construed either *all before* or *all after* the noun; as, "Vir bonus et prudens,"—a good and prudent man.

Rule 4.—Adverbs which express a quality are taken *with* the adjectives, participles, or other words to which they belong; as, "Vita benè acta,"—*vita* a life, *benè acta* well spent.

Rule 5.—Construe the preposition *with* the case which it governs; as, "Secundùm meam opinionem," according to my opinion,—not *secundùm* according to, *meam opinionem* my opinion.

Rule 6.—Construe the relative and its own clause immediately after the antecedent; as, "Urbs, *quam Romŭlus condĭdit*, Roma vocabātur,"—the city, *which Romulus built*, was called Rome.

Rule 7.—Construe, as near to one another as possible, all correspondent words, as *talis*, *qualis*—*tantus*, *quantus*—*priùs*, *quàm*; as, "*Priùs* resciscĕris tu, *quàm* ego,"—you should know (*priúsquàm*) sooner than I.

Rule 8.—Words in apposition must be construed as near to one another as possible: as, "Effodiuntur *opes, irritamenta* malōrum,"—riches, the incentives to vice, are dug out of the earth.

Rule 9.—An ablative absolute may be construed in any part of the sentence, which will make the sense most clear and easy.

Rule 10.—A substantive in the genitive is usually construed after another substantive or an adjective; as, "Crescit *amor nummi*,"—the love of money increases: "Novitātis avĭda," fond of novelty.

Rule 11.—An infinitive mood, though generally construed after a finite verb, is sometimes taken after an accusative case; as, "Te rediisse gaudeo,"—*gaudeo* I am glad, *te* that you, *rediisse* are returned.

Rule 12.—Certain adverbs and conjunctions, as, *ut, si, nam, cùm, etc.*, are construed first in their own clause: so the relative *qui*, and the interrogative *quis*.

Rule 13.—When more oblique cases than one depend on the same verb, construe accusatives before datives, datives before ablatives, and genitives immediately after the verb.

Rule 14.—When *sum*, with a dative, is used in the sense of *habeo*, the English nominative is expressed in Latin by a dative, and the English accusative by a Latin nominative; "Est mihi pater:" construe the dative and the verb together in the sense of "to have," and then the nominative case; thus, *est mihi* I have *pater* a father.

DIRECTIONS FOR THE TRANSLATOR.

1. In rendering English into Latin, translate as literally as the idiom of the two languages will allow.

2. The Latin is, in general, to be made the same as the English; except in particular phrases or idiomatic expressions.

3. Employ appropriate words,—to be found in the Dictionary, but only to be fully learned by carefully reading the best Latin writers.

4. Avoid Anglicisms, or modes of expression peculiar to our own language, which cannot be translated literally.

5. Do not translate words which may with propriety be omitted, as *man, men, thing, things, etc.*: good (men) are scarce, "Boni sunt rari;" the best (things) are the most scarce, "Optĭma sunt rarissĭma;" it is (the part or duty) of a wise

(man), "Sapientis est;" it was (the privilege) of a senator, "Senatōris erat."

6. A preposition after the English verb with no case belonging to it, either is not translated, or is translated by using a Latin verb compounded with that preposition; as, "To lay burdens *on*," *im*ponĕre onĕra.

7. Render not the English by two distinct Latin words, when one word can be found to express it: as, "How great," *quantus*,—not quàm magnus.

8. Avoid using Latin words of the same sound as the English, unless there be no other appropriate word: as *vexatio* for "Vexation."

9. The pronouns *him*, *it*, *them*, with *self*, in the nominative case, are translated by *ipse*; in the other cases by the reciprocal pronoun *sui*.

10. *His*, *her*, *its*, and *their*, are made Latin by the genitive cases of *ille*, *is*, *etc.*; and when the word *own* may be added, by *suus*, or the genitive of *ipse*.

11. The adjectives of quantity, *much*, *little*, *more*, *less*, *how much*, *so much*, *etc.*, may be put in the neuter gender in Latin, and the substantive after them in the genitive case: as, "Much good," *multum boni*; "How much good," *quantum boni*.

12. *Than*, after an adjective in the comparative degree, need not be translated, provided the noun following be in the ablative case: thus, "Greater (than) man,"—major *homĭne*.

13. The *conjunction* "that," and a nominative case before a finite verb, are often translated by a Latin accusative case and an infinitive; but this conjunction is sometimes omitted in English: "I confess, I have offended," for, I confess *that* I have offended,—confiteor me peccâsse.

14. The *objects* of the verbs to *hurt*, *trust*, *spare*, *indulge*, *favour*, *aid* (auxilior), *consult* (utilitāti consŭlit), *please*, *etc.* are translated by a Latin dative: as, noceo, credo, parco, *illis*.

15. To be angry *at* or *with* a person, or thing, is followed in Latin by a dative: as, "I am angry with you," *irascor tibi*.

RULES OF POSITION, OR, LATIN ARRANGEMENT.

1. The Arrangement or Position of words in Latin rests upon two leading principles: that the words most important in *sense*, or most emphatic, be placed first; and that all which is

necessary to the complete expression of an idea should be placed near together, and not separated.

a. When we arrange words according to their natural connexion, which predominates in most modern languages, we place the *subject* first; next the *verb*, with its *adverb*; then the case of the nearer or remoter *object*; and, last of all, the remaining additions of *prepositions* and their cases; the *adjective* always closely adhering to the substantive which it qualifies. This is called the *Order of Construction*, or the *natural Order*. The English admits little variation from this order in prose: but in Latin, the actual order of many words is fixed without any probable cause being given: though in the arrangement of words generally, *the more emphatic precede the less emphatic; and perspicuity, emphasis, euphony, often occasion a word to be placed out of its syntactical order.* *b.* In ordinary discourse, when no emphasis is intended, the simplest construction is naturally chosen, and not departed from without special reasons. In narrative discourse, after the *introductory* words, such as vocative cases and conjunctions, comes the *subject*, then the *oblique cases*, with all other unemphatic additions, and, last of all, the verb.

2. In historic narrative, and didactic compositions of every kind, the subject or nominative case is generally put before the verb; as, "*Deus* orbem *gubernat*;" except when the subject is closely connected with the succeeding clause, and is limited or explained by it; "Erant omnīnò duo itinĕra, quibus itinerĭbus domo exīre possent."—*Cæs.*

3. The place of the adjective and participle depends, with few exceptions, on the choice of the writer, according as it is more or less emphatic.

a. Summus, medius, ultĭmus, extrēmus, summus, infĭmus, imus, suprēmus, relĭquus, denoting *prima pars*, *media pars*, *etc.*, are generally put before the substantive: as, "Summus mons," "Extrēmo libro."

b. When the substantive governs another in the genitive, the adjective generally precedes both: as, "Propria veri inquisitio;" "Duo Platōnis præcepta."

c. When the substantive is governed by a preposition, the adjective is frequently put before the substantive: as, "Hâc in quæstiōne;" "Magnâ ex parte."

d. A monosyllabic substantive should precede a longer adjective: as, *Di immortāles—rex potentissĭmus—me misĕrum.*

e. The pronouns *is*, *ille*, *hic*, *iste*, are very generally placed before the substantive, and if used substantively, before the participle: as, "Eâ tempestāte;" "Eo regnante."

4. The relative is generally the first word in its own clause; and when it is taken for *et ille*, *et hic*, *et is*, or for these pronouns singly, its place is uniformly the first: as, "Quod ubi Cæsar resciit;" "Qui si jussissent."

5. The governing word is generally placed after its regimen, *laudis avĭdus—hostem fudit—discĕre vŏlo.* Prepositions, as the name imports, almost always precede their cases.

6. The verb generally closes the sentence.

7. Adverbs are commonly placed immediately before the words they qualify: as, "Levĭtèr ægrotantes, lenĭtèr curant."

8. Conjunctions generally introduce the clause to which they belong: as, "At si dares hanc viam."

Exceptions: *a.* The enclitic conjunctions *que*, *ve*, *ne*, are always suffixed, the first two to the latter of the two words, which they serve to couple; as, "Albus atérve;" *boni malique:*—and the last to the subject, which the question chiefly regards; thus, *Loquárne?* Shall I *speak?* *Egóne loquar?* Shall *I* speak?

b. The conjunctions *autem*, *enim*, *verò*, *quoque*, *quidem*, are always placed after the introductory word of the clause, generally in the second place, sometimes in the third: as, *ille autem—ego enim—qui verò.* These are therefore called *postpositive* conjunctions.

c. *Etiam*, *igĭtur*, *tamen*, are more frequently assigned to the second or third place, than the first. Of these, indeed, *igĭtur* seems uniformly to be used by Cicero as a postpositive conjunction: "Hæ disciplĭnæ igĭtur;" "Placet igĭtur;" "Quoniam igĭtur." Tacitus, Nepos, and Sallust, have, in one or two passages, used it prepositively.

9. Circumstances, that is, the *cause*, the *manner*, the *instrument*, the *time*, the *place*, are expressed before the predicate: "Eum ferro occīdi." "Quum Brandusium venissem."

10. The proper name should precede the name of the rank or profession: as, "Cicĕro orātor"—"Annĭbal dux."

11. The vocative case, as a mark of distinction, should either introduce the sentence, or be placed among the first words: as, "Credo, vos, judĭces." "Si tibi, frater, ista contigisset."

12. Where there is an antithesis, the words chiefly opposed to each other should be as close together as possible: as, "Appĕtis *pecuniam*, *virtūtem* abjĭcis." "Exclūdor *ego*, *ille* recipĭtur."

13. *Ne quidem*, not even, are always separated by the word they qualify: as, *ne* unus *quidem*, not even one.

14. *Cum*, governing the ablative cases of *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, and *qui*, is placed after them: as, *mecum*, *tecum*, *secum*, *quibúscum.*

THE ROMAN MODE OF RECKONING.

1. *The Reckoning of Time.*

The Roman calendar agreed with our own in the number of months, and in the days of each month: but instead of reckoning as we do, they had three points from which they dated, the Calends, the Nones, and the Ides.

The Calends were the first day of the month, the Nones the 5th, and the Ides the 13th; but in the months of March, May, July, and October, the Nones fell on the 7th, and the Ides on the 15th.

The names of the months were used as adjectives (*mensis* being implied), or as substantives: the Calends, Ides, and Nones, were therefore called *Calendæ*, *Idus*, *Nonæ Januariæ*, *etc.*, or *Januarii* in the genitive.

In dating a letter on the precise day of any of these points, the Romans wrote *Calendis Januariis*, or *Januarii*, *etc.* The day before was *pridiè Calendas*, *Idus*, *Nonas*, or *pridiè Calendārum*, *etc.*

The Romans reckoned *in* the day on which they dated, calling the second day before the Calends *tertio*, the third *quarto*, and so on: thus, January the 2nd was *quarto* (die ante) *Nonas*, or *Nonārum*; the 3rd, *tertio Nonas*, or *Nonārum*; the 4th (secundo not being used,) *pridiè Nonas*, or *Nonārum*. In like manner with the Ides and the Calends.

Observe particularly, that the Calends being the first day of the month, and the days being reckoned *forwards to* the the Calends, Ides, and Nones, the name of the month, in speaking of the Calends, seemed to be anticipated: thus the 25th of January was *die septĭmo Calendārum Februarii.*

a. In the times of the Republic, July was called *Quintīlis*, and August, *Sextīlis*, because the Romans began the year in March. The names *Julius* and *Augustus* were given in honour of the Cæsars.

b. The founder of Rome began his months on the first day of the new moon, when one of the inferior priests used to assemble the people in the capitol, and *call over* the number of days between it and the Nones: so from the obsolete verb *calāre*, in Greek καλειν, to call over, the first of those days had the name of *Calendæ*.

c. The Nones were so designated, because the Romans reckoned *nine* days from them to the Ides.

d. The Ides were generally about the middle of the month; whence we may derive the term from *iduāre*, an old verb signifying *to divide.*

2. *The Reckoning of Money.*

The Romans reckoned their gold money by Greek *talents*, their silver money by *sestertii*, their copper money by *asses.*

The *as* (originally a pound *weight* of brass or copper) was equal to $3\frac{1}{10}$ farthings, or a fraction less than a penny of our money.

The *denarius*, so called from its being equivalent to ten asses, was equal to seven-pence three-farthings: it was marked with the letter *X*.

The *quinarius* was equal to five asses, and marked with the letter *V*.

The *sestertius*, marked L. L. S. (Libra, Libra, Semis,) or II. S., was a silver coin, equivalent to two asses and a half. It was emphatically called *nummus*, as in it all large sums were reckoned, after the coining of silver money.

Here must be particularly noted, the difference between the *sestertius*, and the neuter noun *sestertium.* The *sestertius*, it has been said, was a *coin:* but the *sestertium* was a *sum*, or amount of coin, equal in value to a thousand *sestertii;* thus *decem sestertia* denotes ten thousand *sestertii.*

In reckoning by *asses*, as the Romans carried their numbers only to *centēna millia*, a hundred thousand, and formed higher numbers by adverbs, as *decies*, *vicies*, *etc.*, the words *centēna millia* came to be left out, and only the numeral adverbs were used: thus "*decies æris*" was but a contracted way of expressing *decies centēna millia assium æris.*

In reckoning by *sesterces*, the neuter noun *sestertium* was joined, in the case required by the construction, with the numeral adverb: thus, "*decies sestertiōrum*" was an elliptical form of expression for *decies centēna millia sestertiōrum*, a million of *sestertii.* The adverb often stood alone, and denoted, with sufficient precision, the sum to be specified; e. gr. *decies*, *vicies*, *etc.*

There were, therefore, three forms carefully to be distinguished from each other:—1st, The *sestertius*, joined with the cardinal numbers, denoted a single *nummus sestertius:* 2nd, the *sestertium*, joined in the plural with ordinals, signified so many

ıds of the *nummi sestertii*; and, 3rd, *sestertium*, joined in gular only with numeral adverbs, denoted so many hun- *stertia*, or hundred thousand *sestertii*.

SYNTAX CONSTRUED.

RBUM personāle *a verb personal* concordat *agrees* cum ıtīvo *with its nominative case* numĕro *in number* et ɜrsōnâ *person:* ut *as*, Via *the way* ad bonos mores *to anners* est *is* nunquam *never* sera *too late*.

ıinatīvus *the nominative case* pronomĭnum *of pronouns* primĭtur *is seldom expressed*, nisi *unless* gratiâ *for the* stinctiōnis *of distinction*, aut *or* emphăsis *energy of ex- n:* ut *as*, Vos *ye* damnâstis *have condemned me*. Tu ı *art* patrōnus *our patron*, tu *you* parens *our father*, si *if* ɜris *you forsake us*, periĭmus *we are undone*. Fertur *he rted* designâsse *to have committed* atrocia flagitia *horrid*

.

ıuando *sometimes* oratio *a sentence*, aut *or* modus infinī- *infinitive mood*, est *is* nominatīvus *the nominative case to a verb:* ut *as*, Didicisse *to have learned* ingenuas artes *ɜral sciences* fidelĭter *thoroughly* emollit *softens much men's manners*, nec sinit *and suffers them not* esse *to be rutal*.

ıuando *sometimes* adverbium *an adverb* cum *with* geni- *genitive case:* ut *as*, Partim virōrum *part of the men* unt *were slain* in bello *in the war*.

RBA *verbs* infinitīvi modi *of the infinitive mood* frequenter tatuunt *set* ante se *before them* accusatīvum *an accusa- se* pro *instead of* nominatīvo *a nominative*, conjunctiōne *junction* quòd *that*, vel *or* ut *that*, omissâ *being left out:* Gaudeo *I am glad* te rediisse *that you are returned* inco- ı *safe*.

bum *a verb* posĭtum *placed* inter *between* duos nomina- *wo nominative cases* diversōrum numerōrum *of different rs* potest *may* concordāre *agree* cum *with* alterŭtro *of them:* ut *as*, Iræ *the quarrels* amantium *of lovers* est gratio *the renewing* amōris *of love*. Pectus *her breast* e *also* fiunt *becomes* robŏra *oak*.

nen *a noun* multitudĭnis *of multitude* singulāre *of the ar number* quandōque *sometimes* jungĭtur *is joined* verbo

plurāli *to a verb plural:* ut *as,* Pars *part of them* abiêre *are gone.* Utérque *both* deluduntur *are deceived* dolis *with tricks.*

Impersonalia *verbs impersonal* non habent *have not* nominatīvum *a nominative case* præcedentem *going before them:* ut *as,* Tædet me *I am weary* vitæ *of my life.* Pertæsum est *I am quite sick* conjugii *of wedlock.*

ADJECTĪVA *adjectives,* participia *participles,* et *and* pronomĭna *pronouns,* concordant *agree* cum *with* substantīvo *the substantive* genĕre *in gender,* numĕro *in number,* et *and* casu *in case:* ut *as,* Rara avis *an uncommon bird* in terris *in the world,* que *and* simillĭma *very much like* nigro cygno *to a black swan.*

Aliquando *sometimes* oratio *a sentence* supplet *supplies* locum *the place* substantīvi *of a substantive,* adjectīvo *the adjective* posĭto *being put* in neutro genĕre *in the neuter gender:* ut *as,* Audīto *it being heard* regem *that the king* proficisci *was set out* Doroberniam *for Dover.*

RELATĪVUM *a relative* concordat *agrees* cum *with* antecedente *its antecedent* genĕre *in gender,* numĕro *in number,* et *and* persōnâ *in person:* ut *as,* Quis *who* est *is* vir bonus *a good man?* Qui *he who* servat *keeps* consulta *the decrees* patrum *of the senators,* qui *he who keeps* leges *the laws* júraque *and ordinances.*

Aliquando *sometimes* oratio *a sentence* ponĭtur *is put* pro *for* antecedente *the antecedent:* ut *as,* Veni *I came* ad eam *to her* in tempŏre *in season,* quod *which* est *is* rerum omnium primum *the main business of all.*

Relatīvum *a relative* collocātum *placed* inter *between* duo substantīva *two substantives* diversōrum genĕrum *of different genders* et *and* numerōrum *numbers* concordat *agrees* interdum *sometimes* cum *with* posteriōre *the latter substantive:* ut *as,* Homĭnes *men* tuentur *regard* illum globum *that globe* quæ *which* dicĭtur *is called* terra *the earth.*

Aliquando *sometimes* relatīvum *a relative* concordat *agrees* cum *with* primitīvo *the primitive,* quod *which* subaudītur *is understood* in possessīvo *in the possessive:* ut *as,* Omnes *all men* dicĕre *said* omnia bona *all hopeful things,* et *and* laudāre *extolled* meas fortūnas *my fortune,* qui habērem *who had* gnatum *a son* prædĭtum *endued* tali ingenio *with such a disposition.*

Si *if* nominatīvus *a nominative case* interponātur *is put between* relatīvo *the relative* et *and* verbo *the verb,* relatīvum *the relative* regĭtur *is governed* à verbo *by the verb,* aut *or* ab aliâ dictione *by some other word* quæ *which* locātur *is placed* in oratiōne *in the sentence* cum verbo *with the verb:* ut *as,* Gratia *thanks* abest *are lost* ab officio *in a kindness* quod *which* mora *delay* tardat *keeps back.* Cujus numen *whose deity* adōro *I adore.*

QUUM *when* duo substantīva *two substantives* diversæ significatiōnis *of a different signification* concurrunt *meet together*, posterius *the latter* ponĭtur *is put* in genitīvo *in the genitive case:* ut *as*, Amor *the love* nummi *of money* crescit *increases*, quantùm *as much as* ipsa pecunia *the money itself* crescit *increases.*

Hic genitīvus *this genitive case* aliquando *sometimes* vertĭtur *is changed* in datīvum *into the dative:* ut *as*, Est *he is* pater *the father* urbi *of the city*, que *and* marītus *the husband* urbi *of the city.*

Adjectīvum *an adjective* in neutro genĕre *of the neuter gender* posĭtum *put* sine substantīvo *without a substantive*, postŭlat *requires* aliquando *sometimes* genitīvum *a genitive case:* ut *as*, Paulŭlum pecuniæ *a very little money.*

Interdum *sometimes* genitīvus *a genitive case* ponĭtur tantùm *is set alone*, priōre substantīvo *the former substantive* subaudīto *being understood* per ellipsin *by the figure ellipsis:* ut *as*, Ubi *when* veněris *you are come* ad Diānæ *to Diana's*, ito *turn* ad dextram *to the right hand:* Subaudi *understand* templum *the word temple.*

Duo substantīva *two substantives* ejusdem rei *respecting the same thing* ponuntur *are put* in eōdem casu *in the same case:* ut *as*, Opes *riches* irritamenta malōrum *the incentives to vice* effodiuntur *are dug out of the earth.*

Laus *the praise*, vituperium *the dispraise*, vel *or* qualĭtas *the quality* rei *of a thing*, ponĭtur *is put* in ablatīvo *in the ablative case*, etiam *also* genitīvo *the genitive:* ut *as*, Puer *a boy* ingenui vultûs *of an ingenuous aspect*, que *and* ingenui pudōris *ingenuous modesty.* Vir *a man* nullâ fide *of no integrity.*

Opus *need* et *and* usus *need* exĭgunt *require* ablatīvum *an ablative case:* ut *as*, Opus est nobis *we have need* auctoritāte tuâ *of your authority.* Non accēpit *he would not receive* pecuniam *money* ab iis *from them*, quâ *of which* sibi esset *he had* nihil usus *no need.*

Autem *but* opus, vidētur *seems* quandōque *sometimes* poni *to be put* adjectīvè *adjectively* pro *for* necessarius *necessary:* ut *as*, Dux *a leader* et *and* auctor *an adviser* est *is* opus *necessary* nobis *for us.*

ADJECTIVA *adjectives*, quæ *which* signifĭcant *signify* desiderium *desire*, notitiam *knowledge*, memoriam *memory*, timōrem *fear*, atque *and* contraria *the contraries* iis *to these*, exĭgunt *require* genitīvum *a genitive case:* ut *as*, Natūra *the nature* homĭnum *of men* est *is* avĭda *fond of* novitātis *novelty.* Mens *a*

mind præscia *foreknowing* futūri *what is to come.* Esto *be thou* memor *mindful* brevis ævi *of the shortness of life.* Immĕmor *unmindful* beneficii *of a kindness.* Imperītus rerum *unacquainted with the world.* Rudis belli *ignorant of war.* Timĭdus deōrum *fearing the gods.* Impavĭdus sui *fearless of himself.*

Adjectīva verbalia *adjectives derived from verbs* in ax *ending in ax* etiam *also* exĭgunt *require* genitīvum *a genitive case:* ut *as,* Audax ingenii *bold by nature.* Tempus *time* edax *is the consumer* rerum *of all things.*

Nomĭna partitīva *nouns partitive,* numeralia *nouns of number,* comparatīva *nouns comparative* et *and* superlatīva *superlatives,* et *also* quædam adjectīva *some adjectives* posĭta *put* partitīvè *partitively,* exĭgunt *require* genitīvum *a genitive case,* à quo *from which* et *also* mutuantur *they take* genus *their gender:* ut *as,* Accĭpe *take* utrum horum *which of these two* mavis *you had rather.* Romŭlus, fuit *was* primus *the first* Romanōrum regum *of the Roman kings.* Dextra *the right* est *is* fortior *the stronger* manuum *of the hands.* Medius *the middle* est *is* longissĭmus *the longest* digitōrum *of the fingers.* Sancte deōrum *O sacred deity!* sequĭmur *we follow* te *you.*

Autem *but* usurpantur *they are used* et *also* cum *with* his præpositionĭbus *these prepositions,* à, ab, de, è, ex, inter, ante: ut *as,* Tertius *the third* ab Ænēâ *from Æneas:* Solus *the only one* de supĕris *of the gods above.* Alter *one* è vobis *of you* es deus *is a god.* Primus *first* inter *among* omnes *all.* Primus *the first* ante omnes *before all.*

Secundus, aliquando *sometimes* exĭgit *requires* datīvum *a dative case:* ut *as,* Secundus *inferior* haud ulli *to none* vetĕrum *of the ancients* virtūte *in valour.*

Interrogatīvum *an interrogative* et *and* ejus redditīvum *the word which answers it* erunt *shall be* ejusdem casûs *of the same case* et *and* tempŏris *tense;* nisi *except* voces *words* variæ constructiōnis *of a different construction* adhibeantur *be made use of:* ut *as,* Quarum rerum *of what things* est *is there* nulla satiĕtas *no fulness?* Divitiārum *of riches.* Ne *whether* accūsas *do you accuse me* furti *of theft,* an *or* homicidii *of murder?* Utrōque *of both.*

ADJECTIVA *adjectives* quibus *whereby* commŏdum *advantage,* incommŏdum *disadvantage,* similitūdo *likeness,* dissimilitūdo *unlikeness,* voluptas *pleasure,* submissio *submission,* aut *or* relatio *relation* ad aliquid *to any thing* significātur *is signified,* postŭlant *require* datīvum *a dative case:* ut *as,* Si *if* facis *you*

take care ut *that* sit *he be* idoneus *serviceable* patriæ *to his country*, utĭlis *useful* agris *to the lands*. Turba *a multitude* gravis *troublesome* paci *to peace*, que *and* inimīca *averse* placĭdæ quiēti *to gentle ease*. Simĭlis *like* patri *to his father*. Color *the colour* qui *which* erat *was* albus *white* est *is* nunc *now* contrarius *contrary* albo *to white*. Jucundus *pleasant* amīcis *to his friends*. Supplex *submissive* omnĭbus *to all*. Poēta *a poet* est *is* finitĭmus *very near akin* oratōri *to an orator*.

Huc *hither* referuntur *are referred* nomĭna *nouns* composĭta *compounded* ex præpositiōne con *of the preposition* con : ut *as*, contubernālis *a comrade*, commilĭto *a fellow-soldier*, conservus *a fellow-servant*, cognātus *a kinsman by birth*, &c.

Quædam *some* ex his *of these adjectives*, quæ *which* significant *signify* similitudĭnem *likeness*, junguntur *are joined* etiam *also* genitīvo *to a genitive case :* ut *as*, Quem *he whom* metuis *you fear* erat *was* par *like* hujus *this man*. Es *you are* simĭlis *like* domĭni *your master*.

Commūnis *common*, aliēnus *strange*, immūnis *free*, junguntur *are joined* genitīvo *to a genitive case*, datīvo *to a dative*, et *also* ablatīvo *to an ablative* cum præpositiōne *with a preposition :* ut *as*, Est *it is* commūne *common* animantium omnium *to all living creatures*. Mors *death* commūnis est *is common* omnĭbus *to all*. Hoc *this* est *is* commūne *common* mihi tecum *to me and you*. Non aliēna *not unfit for* consilii *the design*. Aliēnus ambitiōni *an enemy to ambition*. Non aliēnus *not averse* à studiis *to the studies* Scævŏlæ *of Scævola*. Dabĭtur *it shall be granted* vobis *to you* esse *to be* immunĭbus *free from* hujus mali *this calamity*. Caprifĭcus *the wild fig-tree* est *is* immūnis *free* omnĭbus *to them all*. Sumus *we are* immūnes *free* ab illis malĭs *from those evils*.

Natus *born*, commŏdus *convenient*, incommŏdus *inconvenient*, utĭlis *useful*, inutĭlis *useless*, vehĕmens *earnest*, aptus *fit*, cum multis aliis *with many others*, junguntur *are joined* interdum *sometimes* etiam *also* accusatīvo *to an accusative case* cum *with* præpositiōne *a preposition :* ut *as*, Natus *born* ad gloriam *for glory*. Utĭlis *profitable* ad eam rem *to that business*.

Verbalia *adjectives derived from verbs* in bilis *ending in bilis* accepta *taken* passīvè *passively*, et *also* participialia *participles made adjectives* in dus *ending in* dus, postŭlant *require* datīvum *a dative case :* ut, *as*, Lucus iners *a thick grove* penetrabĭlis *penetrable* nulli astro *by no star*. O Juli *O Julius*, memorande *worthy to be mentioned* mihi *by me* post *after* nullos sodāles *none of my acquaintance*.

MENSURA *the measure* magnitudĭnis *of quantity* subjicĭtur *is put after* adjectīvis *adjectives* in accusatīvo *in the accusative case*, ablatīvo *the ablative*, et *and* genitīvo *the genitive case:* ut as, Turris *a tower* alta *high* centum pedes *a hundred feet.* Fons *a fountain* latus *wide* pedĭbus tribus *three feet*, altus *deep* triginta *thirty.* Area *a floor* lata *broad* pedum denûm *ten feet.*

Accusatīvus *an accusative case* aliquando *sometimes* subjicĭtur *is put after* adjectīvis *adjectives* et *and* participiis *participles*, ubi *where* præpositio secundùm *the preposition* secundùm, vidētur *seems* subintellĭgi *to be understood:* ut *as*, Similis *like* deo *to a god* os *as to his countenance* que *and* humĕros *his shoulders.* Demissus *cast down* vultum *as to his look.*

ADJECTIVA *adjectives*, quæ *which* pertĭnent *relate* ad copiam *to plenty*, ve *or* egestātem *want*, exĭgunt *require* interdum *sometimes* ablatīvum *an ablative*, interdum *sometimes* genitīvum *a genitive case:* ut *as*, Dives *rich* equûm *in horses*, dives *rich* pictāi vestis *in embroidered garments* et *and* auri *gold.* Amor *love* est *is* fœcundissĭmus *very full of* et *both* melle *honey* et *and* felle *gall.* Expers fraudis *void of deceit.* Beātus *abounding* gratiâ *in favour.*

Adjectīva *adjectives* et *and* substantīva *substantives* regunt *govern* ablatīvum *an ablative case* significantem *signifying* causam *the cause*, et *and* formam *the form*, vel *or* modum *the manner* rei *of a thing:* ut *as*, Pallĭdus *pale* irâ *with anger.* Grammatĭcus *a grammarian* nomĭne *in name*, re *in reality* barbărus *a barbarian.* Cæsar, Trojānus *a Trojan* origĭne *by descent.*

Dignus *worthy*, indignus *unworthy*, prædĭtus *endued*, captus *disabled*, contentus *content*, extorris *banished*, fretus *relying upon*, liber *free*, cum *with* adjectīvis *adjectives* significantĭbus *signifying* pretium *price*, exĭgunt *require* ablatīvum *an ablative case:* ut *as*, Es *you are* dignus *worthy* odio *of hatred.* Qui habērem *I who had* gnatum *a son* prædĭtum *endued* tali ingenio *with such a disposition.* Ocŭlis capti talpæ *the blind moles* fodêre *have dug* cubilia *their holes.* Abi *go your way* contentus *contented* sorte tuâ *with your lot.* Animus *a mind* liber *free from* terrōre *fear.* Venāle *to be purchased* gemmis *with jewels* nec *nor* auro *with gold.*

Nonnulla *some* horum *of these* admittunt *admit* interdum *sometimes* genitīvum *a genitive case:* ut *as*, Indignus, *unworthy* magnōrum avōrum *of my great ancestors.* Carmĭna *verses* digna *worthy of* deæ *a goddess.* Extorris *banished* regni *the kingdom.*

Comparatīva *comparatives*, cùm *when* exponuntur *they may*

be explained per *by* quàm *than*, admittunt *receive* ablatīvum *an ablative case:* ut *as*, Argentum *silver* est *is* vilius *of less value* auro *than gold*, aurum *gold* virtutĭbus *than virtue:* id est *that is*, quàm *than* aurum *gold*, quàm *than* virtūtes *virtue.*

Tanto *by so much*, quanto *by how much*, hoc *by this*, eo *by that*, et *and* quo *by which*, cum *with* quibusdam aliis *some others*, quæ *which* significant *signify* mensūram *the measure* excessûs *of exceeding;* item *also* ætāte *by age* et *and* natu *by birth*, junguntur *are joined* sæpè *often* comparatīvis *to comparatives* et *and* superlatīvis *to superlatives:* ut *as*, Tanto *by so much* pessĭmus poēta *he is the worst poet* omnium *of all*, quanto *by how much* tu *you are* optĭmus patrōnus *the best advocate* omnium *of all.* Quo plus habent *the more they have*, eo plus cupiunt *the more they desire.* Major ætāte *the elder*, et *and* maxĭmus ætāte *the eldest.* Major natu, et *and* maxĭmus natu *have the same construction.*

MEI *of me*, tui *of thee or you*, sui *of himself*, nostri *of us*, vestri *of you*, genitīvi *the genitive cases* primitivōrum *of their primitives*, ponuntur *are used* cùm *when* persōna *a person* significātur *is signified:* ut as, Languet *she languishes* desiderio tui *for want of you.* Que *and* pars *part* tui *of you* lateat *may lie* clausa *shut up* corpŏre meo *in my body.* Imāgo nostri *the picture of our person.*

Meus *mine*, tuus *thine*, suus *his own*, noster *ours*, vester *yours*, ponuntur *are used* cùm *when* actio *action* vel *or* possessio *the possession* rei *of a thing* significatur *is signified:* ut *as*, Favet *he favours* desiderio tuo *your desire.* Imāgo nostra *our picture:* id est *that is*, quam *which* nos *we* possidēmus *do possess.*

Hæc possessīva *these pronouns possessive*, meus *mine*, tuus *thine*, suus *his own*, noster *ours*, et *and* vester *yours*, recipiunt *take* post se *after them* hos genitīvos *these genitive cases;* ipsĭus *of himself*, solus *of him alone*, unĭus *of one*, duōrum *of two*, trium *of three*, &c., omnium *of all*, plurium *of more*, paucōrum *of few*, cujusque *of every one;* et *and also* genitīvos *the genitive cases* participiōrum *of participles*, qui *which* referuntur *are referred* ad primitīvum *to the primitive word* subaudītum *understood:* ut *as*, Dixi *I affirmed*, rempublĭcam *that the state* esse salvam *was preserved* meâ unĭus opĕrâ *by my single service.* Meum solĭus peccātum *my offence alone* non potest *cannot* corrĭgi *be amended.* Cùm *whereas* nemo *nobody* legat *reads* scripta mea timentis *the writings of me fearing* recitāre *to rehearse them* vulgò *publicly.* Cepĕris conjectūram *you may guess* de studio tuo ipsĭus *by your own study.* Præstantior

more excellent in suâ cujusque laude *each in his own skill:* Nostrâ omnium memoriâ *in the memory of us all.* Respondet *he answers* vestris paucōrum laudĭbus *the praises of you few.*

Sui *of himself* et *and* suus *his own* sunt *are* reciprŏca *reciprocals:* hoc est *that is,* reflectuntur *they have relation* semper *always* ad id *to that* quod *which* præcessit *went before* præcipuum *most to be noted* in sententiâ *in the sentence:* ut *as,* Petrus *Peter* admirātur *admires* se *himself* nimĭum *too much.* Parcit *he spares* errorĭbus suis *his own errors.* Petrus *Peter* magnopĕrè rogat *earnestly begs,* ne se deserĕras *that you would not forsake him.*

Hæc demonstrativa *these pronouns demonstrative,* hic, iste, ille, distinguuntur *are distinguished* sic *thus:* hic, demonstrat *points to* proxĭmum *the nearest* mihi *to me;* iste, eum *him* qui *who* est *is* apud te *by you;* ille, eum *him* qui *who* est *is* remōtus *at a distance* ab utrōque *from both of us.*

Cŭm *when* hic, et *and* ille, referuntur *are referred* ad duo anteposĭta *to two things or persons going before,* hic, plerumque *generally* refertur *is referred* ad posterius *to the latter,* ille, ad prius *to the former:* ut *as,* Quocunque *which way soever* aspicias *you look* est *there is* nihil *nothing* nisi *but* pontus *sea* et *and* aër *the air;* hic *the latter* tumĭdus *swelling* nubĭbus *with clouds,* ille *the former* minax *threatening* fluctĭbus *with waves.*

VERBA substantīva *verbs substantive;* ut *as,* sum *I am,* forem *I might be,* fio *I am made,* existo *I am;* Verba passīva *verbs passive* vocandi *of calling;* ut *as,* nomĭnor *I am named,* appellor *I am called,* dicor *I am said,* vocor *I am called,* nuncŭpor *I am named;* et *and* similia *the like* iis *to them;* ut *as,* videor *I am seen,* habeor *I am accounted,* existĭmor *I am thought;* habent *have* eosdem casus *the same cases* utrinque *on both sides:* ut *as,* Deus *God* est *is* summum bonum *the chief good.* Perpusilli *very little persons* vocantur *are called* nani *dwarfs.* Fides *faith* habētur *is reckoned* fundamentum *the foundation* religiōnis nostræ *of our religion.* Natūra *nature* dedit *hath granted* omnĭbus *to all* esse *to be* beātis *happy.*

Item *likewise* omnia verba *all verbs* ferè *in a manner* admittunt *admit* post se *after them* adjectīvum *an adjective,* quod *which* concordat *agrees* cum *with* nominativo verbi *the nominative case of the verb* casu *in case,* genĕre *gender,* et *and* numĕro *number:* ut *as,* Pii *pious men* orant *pray* tacĭti *silently.* Malus pastor *a bad shepherd* dormit *sleeps* supīnus *with his face upwards.*

SUM, postŭlat *requires* genitīvum *a genitive case* quoties *as often as* significat *it signifies* possessiōnem *possession,* officium

duty, signum *sign*, aut *or* id *that* quod *which* pertĭnet *has respect* ad rem quampiam *to any thing:* ut *as*, Pecus *the cattle* est *is* Melibœi *Melibœus's*. Est *it is the duty* adolescentis *of a young man* reverēri *to reverence* majōres natu *his elders*.

Hi nominatīvi *these nominative cases* excipiuntur *are excepted:* meum *mine*, tuum *thine*, suum *his*, nostrum *our*, vestrum *your*, humānum *human*, belluīnum *brutal*, et *and* similia *the like:* ut *as*, Non est meum *it becomes not me* dicĕre *to speak* contra *against* auctoritātem *the authority* senātûs *of the senate*. Est *it is* humānum *a human frailty* irasci *to be angry*.

Verba *verbs* accusandi *of accusing*, damnandi *of condemning*, monendi *of warning*, absolvendi *of acquitting*, et *and* similia *the like*, postŭlant *require* genitīvum *a genitive case*, qui *which* significat *signifies* crimen *the charge:* ut *as*, Oportet *it is fit* eum *that he* qui *who* accūsat *accuses* altĕrum *another* probri *of dishonesty* intuēri *should look into* se ipsum *himself*. Condemnat *he condemns* genĕrum suum *his son-in-law* scelĕris of *wickedness*. Admonēto illum *remind him* pristĭnæ fortūnæ *of his former condition*. Absolūtus est *he is acquitted* furti *of theft*.

Hic genitīvus *this genitive case* vertĭtur *is changed* aliquando *sometimes* in ablatīvum *into an ablative*, vel *either* cum præpositiōne *with a preposition*, vel *or* sine præpositiōne *without a preposition:* ut *as*, Putāvi *I thought* te esse admonendum *you ought to be put in mind* de eâ re *of that matter*. Si *if* es *you are* inīquus judex *a partial judge* in me *to me*, ego *I* condemnābo *will condemn* te *you* eōdem crimĭne *of the same crime*.

Uterque *both*, nullus *none*, alter *the other*, neuter *neither of the two*, alius *another*, ambo *both*, et *and* superlatīvus gradus *the superlative degree*, junguntur *are joined* verbis *to verbs* id genus *of that kind* non nisi *only* in ablatīvo *in the ablative case:* ut *as*, Accūsas *do you accuse him* furti *of theft* an *or* stupri *dishonesty?* Utrōque, vel *or* de utrōque *of both;* ambōbus, vel *or* de ambōbus *of both;* neutro, vel *or* de neutro *of neither*. Accusāris *you are accused* de plurĭmis *of very many things* simul *at once*.

Satăgo *to be busy about a thing*, misereor, et *and* miseresco *to pity*, postŭlant *require* genitīvum *a genitive case:* ut *as*, Is *he* satăgit *has his hands full* rerum suārum *of his own business*. Oro *I pray you* miserēre *pity* laborum tantōrum *so great distresses;* miserēre *pity* anĭmæ *a soul* ferentis *suffering* non digna *things undeserved*. Et *and* miseresce *pity* genĕris tui *your own family*.

Reminiscor *to remember*, obliviscor *to forget*, memĭni *to re-*

member, recordor *to call to mind*, admittunt *admit* genitīvum *a genitive case*, aut *or* accusatīvum *an accusative*: ut *as*, Reminiscĭtur *he remembers* datæ fidēi *his promise*. Est *it is* prŏprium *the property* stultitiæ *of folly* cernĕre *to discern* aliōrum vitia *other men's faults*, oblīvisci *to forget* suōrum *its own*. Paciam *I will give you cause* ut meminĕris *to remember* hujus loci *this place* semper *always*. Juvābit *it will be a pleasure* olim *hereafter* meminisse *to call to mind* hæc *these things*. Recordor *I remember* hujus merĭti *this favour* in me *towards me*. Si *if* recordor *I recollect* ritè *well* audīta *the things I heard*.

Potior *to gain or enjoy* jungĭtur *is joined* aut *either* genitīvo *to a genitive case*, aut *or* ablatīvo *to an ablative*: ut *as*, Romāni *the Romans* potīti sunt *gained* signōrum *the standards* et *and* armōrum *the arms*. Troēs *the Trojans* egressi *being landed* potiuntur *enjoy* optātâ arēnâ *the wish'd-for shore*.

OMNIA verba *all verbs* regunt *govern* datīvum *a dative case* ejus rei *of that thing* cui *to or for which* alĭquid *any thing* acquirĭtur *is gotten* aut *or* adimĭtur *is taken away*: ut *as*, Nec serĭtur *there is neither sowing* nec metĭtur *nor mowing* mihi *for me* istic *in this matter*. Quis casus *what accident* adēmit te *hath taken thee from* mihi *me*?

Imprīmis *in the first place*, verba *verbs* significantia *signifying* commŏdum *advantage*, aut *or* incommŏdum *disadvantage*, regunt *govern* datīvum *a dative case*: ut *as*, Non potes *you cannot* commodāre *serve* nec *nor* incommodāre *disserve* mihi *me*.

Ex his *of these*, juvo *to help*, lædo *to hurt*, delecto *to delight*, et *and* alia quædam *some other verbs*, exĭgunt *require* accusatīvum *an accusative case*: ut *as*, Quies *rest* plurĭmùm juvat *very much delights* fessum *a wearied man*.

Verba *verbs* comparandi *of comparing* regunt *govern* datīvum *a dative case*: ut *as*, Sic *thus* solēbam *was I used* componĕre *to compare* magna *great things* parvis *to small*.

Verò *but* interdum *sometimes* ablatīvum *an ablative case* cum præpositiōne *with the preposition* cum; interdum *sometimes* accusatīvum *an accusative case* cum *with* præpositionĭbus ad et inter, *the prepositions* ad *and* inter: ut *as*, Compăro *I compare* Virgilium *Virgil* cum *with* Homēro *Homer*. Si *if* comparātur *he is compared* ad eum *to him* nihil est *he is nothing*. Hæc *these things* non sunt *are not* conferenda *to be compared* inter se *one with another*.

Verba *verbs* dandi *of giving* et *and* reddendi *of restoring* regunt *govern* datīvum *a dative case*: ut *as*, Fortūna *fortune dat gives* nimis *too much* multis *to many*, satis *enough* nulli *to*

nobody. Est *he is* ingrātus *ungrateful,* qui *who* non repōnit *does not return* gratiam *thanks* benè merenti *to his benefactor.*

Verba *verbs* promittendi *of promising,* ac *and* solvendi *of paying,* regunt *govern* datīvum *a dative case:* ut *as,* Quæ *which things* promitto *I promise* tibi *to you,* ac *and* recipio *engage* esse observatūrum *to be observed* sanctissĭmè *most religiously.* Numerāvit *he paid* mihi *me* æs aliēnum *the debt.*

Verba *verbs* imperandi *of commanding,* et *and* nuntiandi *of telling,* regunt *govern* datīvum *a dative case:* ut *as,* Pecunia *money* collecta *gathered up* impĕrat *commands* aut *or* servit *serves* cuique *every man.* Sæpe *often* vidēto *take care* quid dicas *what you say* de quoque viro *of any man* et *and* cui *to whom.*

Excĭpe *except* rego *to rule,* guberno *to govern,* quæ *which verbs* habent *have* accusatīvum *an accusative case;* tempĕro *to rule,* et *and* moděror *to rule,* quæ *which* nunc *sometimes* habent *have* datīvum *a dative case,* nunc *sometimes* accusatīvum *an accusative case:* ut *as,* Luna *the moon* regit *rules* menses *the months:* Deus ipse *God himself* gubernat *governs* orbem *the world.* Ipse *he* tempĕrat sibi *has the command of himself.* Sol *the sun* tempĕrat *orders* omnia *all things* luce *by its light.* Hic *he* moderātur *manages* equos *his horses,* qui *who* non moderabĭtur *will not govern* iræ *his passion.*

Verba *derbs* fidendi *of trusting* regunt *govern* datīvum *a dative case:* ut *as,* Decet *it is fit* committĕre *to commit* nil *nothing* nisi *but* lene *what is soft* vacuis venis *to the empty veins.*

Verba *verbs* obsequendi *of complying with,* et *and* repugnandi *of opposing,* regunt *govern* datīvum *a dative case:* ut *as,* Pius filius *a dutiful son* semper *always* obtempĕrat *obeys* patri *his father.* Fortūna *fortune* repugnat *opposes* ignāvis precĭbus *the prayers of the slothful.*

Verba *verbs* minandi *of threatening,* et *and* irascendi *of being angry,* regunt *govern* datīvum *a dative case:* ut *as,* Minitātus est *he threatened* mortem *death* utrīque *to both.* Nihil est *there is no reason* quòd succenseam *why I should be angry* adolescenti *with the young man.*

Sum, cum compositis *with its compounds,* præter *except* possum, regit *governs* datīvum *a dative case:* ut *as,* Rex pius *a pious king* est *is* ornamentum *an ornament* reipublĭcæ *to the state.* Nec obest *it neither hurts,* nec prodest *nor profits* mihi *me.*

Verba *verbs* composĭta *compounded* cum his adverbiis *with these adverbs,* benè *well,* satis *enough,* malè *ill;* et *and* cum

his præpositionĭbus *with these prepositions*, præ, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in, inter, fermè *for the most part* regunt *govern* datīvum *a dative case:* ut *as*, Dii *may the gods* benefaciant *do good* tibi *to thee!* Ego *I* præluxi *outshone* meis majorĭbus *my ancestors* virtūte *in virtue.* Qui *who* intempestīvè *out of season* adlusĕrit *joked upon him* occupāto *when he was busy.* Hoc *this* condūcit *conduces* tuæ laudi *to your praise.* Convixit *he lived* nobis *with us.* Subŏlet uxōri *my wife has a jealousy* jam *already* quod ego machĭnor *what I am contriving.* Antefĕro *I prefer* iniquissĭmam pacem *the most unequal peace* justissĭmo bello *before the most just war.* Postpōno *I postpone* pecuniam *money* famæ *to reputation.* Quoniam *because* ea *she* potest *can* obtrūdi *be thrust* nemĭni *upon nobody*, itur ad me *they come to me.* Periculum *danger* impendet *hangs over* omnĭbus *all.* Non solùm interfuit *he was not only present* his rebus *at these things*, sed *but* etiam *also* præfuit *he was chief in them.*

Non pauca *not a few* ex his *of these* aliquoties *sometimes* mutant *change* datīvum *the dative* in alium casum *into another case:* ut *as*, Alius *one* præstat *exceeds* alium *another* ingenio *in ability.*

Est, pro *for* habeo *to have*, regit *governs* datīvum *a dative case:* ut *as*, Namque *for* est mihi *I have* pater *a father* domi *at home*, est *I have* injusta noverca *a severe step-mother.*

Suppĕtit *it sufficeth* est *is* simĭle *like* huic *to this:* ut *as*, Enim *for* non est *he is not* pauper *poor*, cui rerum suppĕtit usus *who has a sufficiency.*

Sum, cum multis aliis *with many others*, admittit *admits* gemĭnum datīvum *a double dative case:* ut *as*, Mare *the sea* est *is* exitio *the destruction* avĭdis nautis *of greedy sailors.* Speras *do you expect* fore *that should be* laudi *a credit* tibi *to yourself*, quod *which* vertis *you impute* vitio *as a fault* mihi *to me?*

Est ubi *sometimes* hic datīvus *this dative case* tibi, aut *or* sibi, aut *or* etiam *also* mihi, addĭtur *is added* elegantiæ causâ *for the sake of elegance in expression:* ut *as*, Jugŭlo *I stab* hunc *this man* suo sibi gladio *with his own sword.*

VERBA transitīva *verbs transitive* cujuscunque generis *of what kind soever*, sive *whether* actīvi *active*, sive *or* deponentis *deponent*, sive *or* commūnis *common*, exĭgunt *require* accusatīvum *an accusative case:* ut *as*, Fugĭto *avoid* percontatōrem *an inquisitive person*, nam *for* idem *the same* est *is* garrŭlus *a blab.* Aper *the boar* depopulātur *lays waste* agros *the fields.* Imprīmis *in the first place* venerāre deos *address yourself to the gods.*

Verba neutra *verbs neuter* habent *have* accusatīvum *an accu-*

sative case cognātæ significatiōnis *of a like signification:* ut *as,* Servit *he serves* duram servitūtem *a hard servitude.*

Sunt *there are some verbs* quæ *which* habent *have* accusatīvum *an accusative case* figurātè *by a figure:* ut *as,* Nec *nor* vox *does your voice* sonat *sound* hominem *like a human creature;* ô dea *o a goddess,* certè *doubtless.*

Verba *verbs* rogandi *of asking,* docendi *of teaching,* vestiendi *of clothing,* celandi *of concealing,* ferè *commonly* regunt *govern* duplicem accusatīvum *two accusative cases:* ut *as,* Tu modò *do but you* posce *ask* veniam *pardon* deos *of the gods.* Dedocēbo *I will unteach* te *you* istos mores *those manners.* Ridiculum est *it is a jest* te *for you* admonēre me *to remind me* istuc *of that.* Induit se *he puts on* calceos *the shoes* quos *which* exuĕrant *he had put off* priùs *before.* Consuefēci *I have accustomed* filium *my son* ne celet *not to conceal* ea *these things* me *from me.*

Verba *verbs* hujusmŏdi *of this sort* habent *have* post se *after them* accusatīvum *an accusative case* etiam *also* in passīvâ voce *in the passive voice:* ut *as,* Poscĕris *you are required to sacrifice* exta *the entrails* bovis *of a heifer.*

Nomĭna appellativa *nouns appellative* ferè *commonly* adduntur *are added* cum *with* præpositiōne *a preposition* verbis *to verbs,* quæ *which* denŏtant *denote* motum *motion;* ut *as,* Ibant *they went* ad templum *to the temple* Pallădis *of Pallas.*

QUODVIS verbum *every verb* admittit *admits* ablatīvum *an ablative case* significantem *signifying* instrumentum *the instrument,* aut *or* causam *the cause,* aut *or* modum *the manner* actiōnis *of an action:* ut as, Hi *these* certant *endeavour* defendĕre *to defend themselves* jacŭlis *with darts,* illi *they* saxis *with stones.* Vehementer excanduit *he turned excessively pale* irâ *with anger.* Perēgit *he performed* rem *the matter* mirâ celeritāte *with wonderful dispatch.*

Nomen pretii *a noun of price* subjicĭtur *is put after* quibusdam verbis *some verbs* in ablativo casu *in the ablative case:* ut *as,* Non emĕrim *I would not purchase it* teruncio *at a farthing,* seu *or* vitiōsâ nuce *a rotten nut.* Ea victoria *that victory* stetit *cost* Pœnis *the Carthaginians* multōrum sanguĭne *much blood* ac *and* vulnerĭbus *wounds.*

Vili *at a low rate,* paulo *for little,* minĭmo *for very little,* magno *for much,* nimio *for too much,* plurĭmo *for very much,* dimidio *for half,* duplo *for twice as much,* ponuntur *are put* sæpe *often* per se *by themselves;* voce pretio *the word* pretio *(price)* subaudītâ *being understood:* ut *as,* Tritĭcum *wheat* venit *is sold* vili *at a low rate.*

Hi genitīvi *these genitive cases* posĭti *put* sine substantīvis *without substantives* excipiuntur *are excepted;* tanti *for so much,* quanti *for how much,* pluris *for more,* minōris *for less,* tantīdem *for just so much,* quantīvis, quantilĭbet, *for as much as you please,* quanticunque *for how much soever:* ut *as,* Eris *you will be* tanti *of so much value* aliis *to others* quanti *as* fuĕris *you are* tibi *to yourself.*

Flocci *of a lock of wool,* nauci *of a nutshell,* nihĭli *of nothing,* pili *of a hair,* assis *of a penny,* hujus *of this,* teruncii *of a farthing,* adduntur *are added* peculiarĭter *very properly* verbis *to verbs* æstimandi *of esteeming:* ut *as,* Ego illum flocci pendo *I don't value him a straw,* nec hujus facio *nor do I regard him this,* qui *who* me pili æstĭmat *esteems me not a hair.*

Verba *verbs* abundandi *of abounding,* implendi *of filling,* onerandi *of loading,* et *and* his diversa *their contraries,* junguntur *are joined* ablatīvo *to an ablative case:* ut *as,* Antipho, abundas *you abound* amōre *with what you love.* Sylla, explēvit *filled* omnes suos *all his army* divitiis *with riches.* Quibus mendaciis *with what lies* homĭnes levissĭmi *have the vainest men* onerârunt *loaded* te *you?* Expĕdi *clear* te *yourself* hoc crimĭne *of this charge.*

Ex quibus *of which* quædam *some verbs* nonnunquam *sometimes* regunt *govern* genitīvum *a genitive case:* ut *as,* Implentur *they are filled* vetĕris Bacchi *with old wine,* que *and* pinguis ferīnæ *fat venison.* Quasi *as though* tu indigeas *you have need of* hujus patris *his father.*

Fungor *to discharge,* fruor *to enjoy,* utor *to use,* vescor *to live upon,* dignor *to think one's self worthy,* muto *to change,* communĭco *to communicate,* supersedeo *to pass by,* junguntur *are joined* ablatīvo *to an ablative case:* ut *as,* Qui *he who* volet *shall desire* adipisci *to get* veram gloriam *true glory* fungātur *should discharge* officiis *the duties* justitiæ *of justice.* Est *it is* optĭmum *an excellent thing* frui *to profit* aliēnâ insaniâ *by the madness of others.* Juvat *it is of service* si *if* utāre *you can use* anĭmo bono *a good courage* in re malâ *in a bad matter.* Vescor *I eat* carnĭbus *flesh.* Equĭdem *truly* haud dignor me *I do not think myself worthy* tali honōre *of such honour.* Diruit *he pulls down,* ædifĭcat *he builds,* mutat *he changes* quadrāta *square things* rotundis *for round.* Communicābo te *I will give you access* mensâ meâ *to my table.* Supersedendum est *we must forbear* multitudĭne *a multitude* verbōrum *of words.*

Mereor *to deserve* cum adverbiis *with these adverbs,* benè *well,* malè *ill,* meliùs *better,* pejùs *worse,* optĭmè *very well,*

pessĭmè *very ill*, jungĭtur *is joined* ablatīvo *to an ablative case* cum præpositiōne de *with the preposition* de: ut *as*, Nunquam merĭtus est *he never deserved* benè *well* de me *of me*.

Quædam verba *certain verbs* accipiendi *of receiving*, distandi *of being distant*, et *and* auferendi *of taking away*, aliquando *sometimes* junguntur *are joined* datīvo *to a dative case:* ut *as*, Celāta virtus *concealed virtue* paulum distat *differs little* sepultæ inertiæ *from lifeless sloth*. Erĭpe te moræ *throw off delay*.

Ablatīvus *an ablative case* sumptus *taken* absolūtè *absolutely* addĭtur *is put* quibuslĭbet verbis *to any verbs:* ut *as*, Christus *Christ* natus est *was born*, imperante Augusto *when Augustus was Emperor;* crucifixus *was crucified*, imperante Tiberio *when Tiberius was emperor*. Me duce *I being your guide*, eris *you will be* tutus *safe*.

Ablatīvus *an ablative case* partis *of the part* affectæ *affected*, et *and* poētĭcè *by the poets* accusatīvus *an accusative*, addĭtur *is added* verbis quibusdam *to some verbs:* ut *as*, Ægrōtat *he is sick* anĭmo *in mind* magis quàm *more than* corpŏre *in body*. Candet dentes *his teeth are white*. Rubet capillos *his hair is red*.

Quædam *some of these verbs* usurpantur *are used* etiam *also* cum genitīvo *with a genitive case:* ut *as*, Facis *you act* absurdè *absurdly* qui *who* angas *tormentest* te *yourself* anĭmi *in mind*.

ABLATIVUS *an ablative case* agentis *of the doer* addĭtur *is added* passīvis *to verbs passive*, sed *but* præpositiōne *with the preposition* à, vel *or* ab, antecedente *going before;* et *and also* interdum *sometimes* datīvus *a dative case:* ut *as*, Laudātur *he is praised* ab his *by these*, culpātur *he is blamed* ab illis *by those*. Honesta *things honest* non occulta *not things hidden* quæruntur *are aimed at* bonis viris *by good men*.

Cætĕri casus *the other cases* manent *continue* in passīvis *in verbs passive*, qui *which* fuērunt *belonged to them* activōrum *as actives:* ut *as*, Accusāris *you are accused* furti *of theft* à me *by me*. Habebĕris ludibrio *you will be made a laughing-stock*. Dedocebĕris *you shall be untaught* istos mores *those manners* à me *by me*. Privabĕris *you shall be deprived* magistrātu *of your office*.

Vapŭlo *to be beaten*, veneo *to be sold*, liceo *to be prized*, exŭlo *to be banished*, fio *to be made*, neutro-passīva *neuter-passives*, habent *have* passīvam constructiōnem *a passive construction:* ut *as*, Vapulābis *you shall be beaten* à præceptōre

by the master. Malo *I had rather* spoliāri *be stript* à cive *by a citizen* quàm *than* venīre *be sold* ab hoste *by an enemy.* Virtus *virtue* licet *is set* parvo pretio *at a low price* ab omnībus *by all.* Cur *why* exŭlat philosophia *is philosophy banished* à convivantĭbus *by persons at feasts?* Quid *what* fiet *will become* ab illo *of him?*

VERBA infinīta *verbs of the infinitive mood* adduntur *are put after* quibusdam verbis *some verbs,* participiis *participles,* et *and* adjectīvis *adjectives,* et *and also* substantīvis *substantives* poëtĭcè *by the poets:* ut *as,* Amor *love* jussit *commanded me* scribĕre *to write* quæ *what things* puduit *I was ashamed* dicĕre *to speak.* Jussus *being ordered* confundĕre fœdus *to violate the treaty.* Erat *he was* tum *then* dignus *worthy* amāri *to be loved.* Tempus *it is time* tibi *for you* abīre *to be gone.*

Verba infinīta *verbs of the infinitive mood* interdum *sometimes* ponuntur *are put* sola *alone* per ellipsin *by the figure ellipsis:* ut *as,* Hinc *upon this* spargĕre in vulgum [*he began*] *to scatter abroad* voces ambiguas *doubtful sayings;* et *and* conscius *knowing himself guilty* quærĕre *to seek* arma *means to destroy me.*

GERUNDIA *gerunds,* et *and* supīna *supines* regunt *govern* casus *the cases* suōrum verbōrum *of their own verbs:* ut *as,* Efferor *I am transported* studio *with desire* videndi *of seeing* patres vestros *your fathers.* Utendum est *we must make use of* ætāte *our time;* ætas *time* prætĕrit *passes away* cito pede *with a nimble pace.* Mittĭmus *we send* scitātum *to consult* oracŭla *the oracle* Phœbi *of Apollo.*

GERUNDIA in di *gerunds in di* habent *have* eandem constructiōnem *the same construction* cum *with* genitīvis *genitive cases,* et *and* pendent *depend* tum *both* à quibusdam substantīvis *on certain substantives,* tum *and also* adjectīvis *adjectives:* ut *as,* Innātus amor *a natural desire* habendi *of getting honey* urget *excites* Cecropias apes *the Attic bees.* Ænēas, celsâ in puppi *in his tall ship* jam certus *already determined* eundi *to go.*

Gerundia in do *gerunds in do* obtĭnent *have* eandem constructiōnem *the same construction* cum *with* ablatīvis *ablative cases;* et *and also* gerundia in dum *gerunds in dum* cum *with* accusatīvis *accusative cases:* ut *as,* Ratio *the means* scribendi *of writing* conjuncta est *is joined* cum loquendo *with speaking.* Vitium *the disease* alĭtur *is nourished,* que *and* vivit *lives,*

tegendo *by being concealed.* Locus *a place* amplissĭmus *very honourable* ad agendum *to plead in.*

Cùm *when* necessĭtas *necessity* significātur *is signified,* gerundia in dum *gerunds ending in dum* ponuntur *are used* citra præpositiōnem *without a preposition,* addĭto verbo est *the verb* est *being added:* ut *as,* Orandum est *we must pray,* ut sit *that he may have* mens sana *a sound mind* in corpŏre sano *in a sound body.* Vigilandum est ei *he must watch,* qui *who* cupit *desires* vincĕre *to conquer.*

Gerundia *gerunds* etiam *also* vertuntur *are changed* in nomĭna adjectīva *into nouns adjective:* ut *as,* Duci *to be persuaded* præmio *by a bribe* ad accusandos homĭnes *to accuse men,* est *is* proxĭmum *next akin* latrocinio *to robbery.*

SUPINUM in um *the supine in um* signifĭcat *signifies* actīvè *actively,* et *and* sequĭtur *follows* verbum *a verb,* aut *or* participium *a participle,* signifĭcans *signifying* motum *motion* ad locum *to a place:* ut *as,* Veniunt *they come* spectātum *to see,* veniunt *they come* ut *that* ipsæ *they themselves* spectentur *may be seen.* Milĭtes *soldiers* missi sunt *were sent* speculātum *to view* arcem *the citadel.*

Supīnum in u *the supine in u* signifĭcat *signifies* passīvè *passively,* et *and* sequĭtur *follows* nomĭna adjectīva *nouns adjective:* ut *as,* Quod *that which* est *is* fœdum *foul* factu *to be done,* id'em *the same* est *is* et *also* turpe *shameful* dictu *to be spoken.*

QUÆ *nouns which* signifĭcant *signify* partem tempŏris *a part of time,* ponuntur *are put* frequentĭus *more commonly* in ablatīvo *in the ablative case:* ut *as,* Nemo mortalium *no mortal man* sapit *is wise* omnĭbus horis *at all hours.*

Autem *but* quæ *nouns which* signifĭcant *signify* duratiōnem *the duration* tempŏris *of time,* ponuntur *are put* ferè *commonly* in accusatīvo *in the accusative case:* ut *as,* Hîc *here* jam *from this time* regnabĭtur *kings shall reign* ter centum totos annos *full three hundred years.*

In paucis diēbus *within a few days.* De die *by day.* De nocte *by night.* Promitto *I promise* in diem *for a day.* Commŏdo *I lend* in mensem *for a month.* Annos ad quinquaginta natus *fifty years old.* Studui *I studied* per tres annos *three years.* Puer *a child* id ætātis *of that age.* Non plus *not above* triduum, aut *or,* triduo *three days.* Tertio, vel *or,* ad tertium *upon the third* calendas, vel *or,* calendārum *of the calends.*

SPATIUM *the space* loci *of a place* ponĭtur *is put* in accusatīvo *in the accusative case*, et *and* interdum *sometimes* in ablatīvo *in the ablative:* ut *as*, Jam *now* processĕram *I had advanced* mille passus *a mile.* Abest *he is distant* quingentis millĭbus passuum *five hundred miles* ab urbe *from the city.* Abest *he is distant* bidui *two days journey*: i. e. spatium, spatio, itinĕre, iter.

OMNE verbum *every verb* admittit *admits* genitīvum *a genitive case* nomĭnis *of the name* oppĭdi *of a city or town* in quo *in which* actio fit *any thing is done;* modò *so that* sit *it be* primæ *of the first* vel *or* secundæ declinatiōnis *the second declension*, et *and* singulāris numĕri *of the singular number:* ut *as*, Quid faciam *what shall I do* Romæ *at Rome?* mentīri nescio *I cannot lie.*

Hi genitīvi *these genitive cases*, humi *upon the ground*, domi *at home*, militiæ *in war*, belli *in war*, sequuntur *follow* formam *the construction* propriōrum *of proper names:* ut *as*, Arma *arms* sunt *are* parvi *of little worth* foris *abroad*, nisi *unless* est *there be* consilium *wisdom* domi *at home.* Fuĭmus *we were* semper *always* unà *together* militiæ *in war* et *and* domi *at home.*

Verŭm *but* si *if* nomen *the name* oppĭdi *of a city or town* fuĕrit *shall be* plurālis numĕri *of the plural number* duntaxàt *only*, aut *or* tertiæ declinatiōnis *of the third declension*, ponĭtur *it is put* in ablatīvo *in the ablative case:* ut *as*, Colchus *a Colchian*, an *or* Assyrius *an Assyrian;* nutrītus *brought up* Thebis *at Thebes*, an *or* Argis *at Argos.* Ventōsus *being inconstant*, Romæ *at Rome* amem *I love* Tibur *Tibur;* Tibŭre *at Tibur* Romam *I love Rome.*

Nomen *the name* loci *of a place* ferè *commonly* addĭtur *is put after* verbis *verbs* significantĭbus *signifying* motum *motion* ad locum *to a place* in accusatīvo *in the accusative case* sine præpositiōne *without a preposition:* ut *as*, Concessi *I went* Cantabrigiam *to Cambridge* ad capiendum ingenii cultum *to get learning.*

Ad hunc modum *after this manner* utĭmur *we use* domus *a house* et *and* rus *the country:* ut *as*, (Capellæ *ye she-goats*,) satŭræ *being full*, ite domum *go home*, Hespĕrus *the evening* venit *approaches.* Ego *I* rus ibo *will go into the country.*

Nomen *the name* loci *of a place* ferè *commonly* addĭtur *is put after* verbis *verbs* significantĭbus *signifying* motum *motion* à loco *from a place* in ablatīvo *in the ablative case* sine præposi-

tiōne *without a preposition:* ut *as,* Nisi profectus esses *if you had not gone* Româ *from Rome* antè *before,* relinquĕres *you would leave* eam *it* nunc *now.*

IMPERSONALIA *verbs impersonal* non habent *have not* nominatīvum *a nominative case:* ut *as,* Juvat *it is pleasant* ire *to go* sub umbras *under the shade.*

Hæc impersonalia *these impersonals,* intĕrest *it concerns,* et *and* refert *it concerns,* junguntur *are joined* quibuslĭbet genitīvis *to any genitive cases,* præter *besides* hos ablatīvos fœminīnos *these ablative cases feminine;* meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ, et *and* cujâ: ut *as,* Intĕrest *it concerns* magistrātûs *the magistrate* tuēri *to defend* bonos *the good,* animadvertĕre in malos *to punish the bad.* Tuâ refert *it concerns you* nôsse *to know* teipsum *yourself.*

Et *also* hi genitīvi *these genitive cases* adduntur *are added,* tanti *so much,* quanti *how much,* magni *much,* parvi *little,* quanticunque *how much soever,* tantīdem *just so much:* ut *as,* Tanti refert *of such concern it is* agĕre *to do* honesta *honest things.*

Impersonalia *verbs impersonal* posĭta acquisitīvè *put acquisitively* postŭlant *require* datīvum *a dative case;* autem *but* quæ *those verbs which* ponuntur *are put* transitīvè *transitively,* accusatīvum *an accusative case:* ut *as,* Benĕfit nobis *we enjoy blessings* à Deo *from God.* Juvat me *it delights me* ire per altum *to travel by sea.*

Verò *but* præpositio *the preposition* ad, propriè addĭtur *is peculiarly added* his *to these verbs,* attĭnet *it belongs,* pertĭnet *it pertains,* spectat *it concerns:* ut *as,* Vis *would you have* me *me* dicĕre *to speak* quod *what* attĭnet *belongs* ad te *to you?* Spectat ad omnes *it concerns all men* vivĕre *to live* benè *well.*

Accusatīvus *an accusative case* cum genitīvo *with a genitive* subjicĭtur *is put after* his impersonalĭbus *these verbs impersonal;* pœnĭtet *it repents,* tædet *it wearies,* misĕret, miserescit *it pities,* pudet *it shames,* piget *it grieves:* ut *as,* Si *if* vixisset *he had lived* ad centesĭmum annum *to the hundredth year,* non pœnitēret *it would not have repented* eum *him* senectūtis suæ *of his old age.* Misĕret me tui *I pity you.*

Verbum impersonāle *a verb impersonal* passīvæ vocis *of the passive voice* potest *may* accĭpi *be taken* pro singŭlis personis *for each person* utriusque numĕri *of both numbers* eleganter *elegantly:* ut *as,* Statur *it is stood,* id est *that is,* sto *I stand,* stas *thou standest,* stat *he stands,* stamus *we stand,* statis *ye and,* stant *they stand:* Statur *it is stood* à me *by me,* id est

that is, sto *I stand:* statur *it is stood* ab illis *by them*, id est *that is*, stant *they stand.*

PARTICIPIA *participles* regunt *govern* casus *the cases* verbōrum *of the verbs* à quibus *from which* derivantur *they are derived:* ut *as*, Tendens *spreading* duplĭces palmas *both his hands* ad siděra *towards heaven*, voce refert *he utters* talia *such things.*

Datīvus *a dative case* interdum *sometimes* addĭtur *is added* participiis *to participles* passīvæ vocis *of the passive voice*, præsertim *especially* si *if* exeunt *they end* in dus: ut *as*, Magnus civis *a mighty citizen* obiit *died*, et *and* formidātus *dreaded* Othōni *by Otho.* Chremes, restat *remains*, qui *who* est *is* exorandus *to be prevailed upon* mihi *by me.*

Participia *participles*, cŭm *when* fiunt *they become* nomĭna *nouns*, exĭgunt *require* genitīvum *a genitive case:* ut *as*, Appētens *greedy* aliēni *of another man's*, profūsus *lavish* sui *of his own.*

Exōsus *hating*, perōsus *utterly hating*, pertæsus *weary of*, significantia *signifying* actīvè *actively*, exĭgunt *require* accusatīvum *an accusative case:* ut *as*, Astronŏmus *an astronomer* exōsus *hating* muliĕres *women* ad unam *in general.* Perōsæ *utterly hating* immundam segnitiem *filthy idleness.* Pertæsus *weary of* ignaviam suam *his own sluggishness.*

Exōsus *hated*, et *and* perōsus *hated to death*, significantia *signifying* passīvè *passively*, leguntur *are read* cum datīvo *with a dative case:* ut *as*, Exōsus *hated* Deo *of God* et *and* sanctis *the saints.* Germāni *the Germans* perōsi sunt *are mortally hated* Romānis *by the Romans.*

Natus *born*, prognātus *born*, satus *sprung*, cretus *descended*, creātus *produced*, ortŭs *risen*, edĭtus *brought forth*, exĭgunt *require* ablatīvum *an ablative case*, et *and* sæpe *oftentimes* cum præpositiōne *with a preposition:* ut *as*, Bona *a virtuous lady* prognāta *born* bonis parentĭbus *of good parents.* Sate *O thou who art sprung* sanguĭne *from the blood* divûm *of the gods!* Quo sanguĭne *from what blood* cretus *he descended.* Venus, orta *sprung* mari *from the sea* præstat mare *secures the sea* eunti *to the passenger.* Terrâ edĭtus *sprung from the earth.* Fui *I was* nympha *a nymph* edĭta *descended* de magno flumĭne *of a great river.*

EN, et *and* ecce, adverbia *adverbs* demonstrandi *of shewing*, junguntur *are joined* frequentiŭs *most commonly* nominatīvo *to a nominative case;* accusatīvo *to an accusative* rariŭs *but sel-*

dom: ut *as*, En *see* Priămus *Priam.* Ecce tibi *behold* status noster *our condition.* En *behold* quatuor aras *four altars:* Ecce *see there* duas *two* tibi *for you*, Daphni *Daphnis*, que *and* duo altaria *two raised altars* Phœbō *for Phœbus.*

En, et *and* ecce, exprobrandi *adverbs of upbraiding*, junguntur *are joined* soli accusatīvo *to an accusative case only:* ut *as*, En anĭmum et mentem *see his mind and disposition.* Ecce autem altĕrum *but see the other here.*

1. Loci *of place:* ut *as*, Ubi *where*, ubĭnam *where*, nusquam *no where*, eò *thither*, longè *far*, quò *whither*, ubĭvis *any where*, huccĭnĕ *what hither*, &c.: ut *as*, Ubi gentium *where in the world?* Invenītur *he is found* nusquam loci *no where.* Ventum est *men are arrived* eò impudentiæ *at such a degree of impudence.* Quò terrārum *to what part of the earth* abiit *is he gone?*

2. Tempŏris *of time:* ut *as*, Nunc *now*, tunc *then*, tum *then*, interea *in the mean time*, pridie *the day before*, postridie *the day after*, &c.: ut *as*, Potĕram *I could do* nihil *nothing* ampliùs *more* tunc tempŏris *at that time* quàm *than* flere *weep.* Iniērunt *they began* pugnam *the battle* pridie *the day before* ejus diēi *that day.* Pridie *the day before* calendārum, vel *or* calendas, *the calends.*

3. Quantitātis *of quantity:* ut *as*, Parùm *but little*, satìs *enough*, abundè *abundantly*, &c.: ut *as*, Satìs eloquentiæ *eloquence enough*, sapientiæ parùm *wisdom little enough.* Audivĭmus *we have heard* abundè fabulārum *a world of tales.*

Quædam *some adverbs* admittunt *admit* casus *the cases* nomĭnum *of the nouns* unde *from which* deducta sunt *they are derived:* ut *as*, Vivit *he lives* inutilĭter *unprofitably* sibi to *himself.* Mauri *the Moors* sunt *are* proxĭmè Hispaniam *next to Spain.* Meliùs *better* vel *or* optĭmè *the best* omnium *of all.* Morabātur *he staid* ampliùs opiniōne *longer than was expected.*

Adverbia *these adverbs* diversitātis *of diversity*, alĭter *otherwise*, secùs *otherwise;* et *and* illa duo *these two*, antè *before*, pòst *after*, non rarò junguntur *are often joined* ablatīvo *to an ablative case:* ut *as*, Multo alĭter *much otherwise.* Paulo secùs *little otherwise.* Multo antè *much before.* Paulo pòst *a little after.* Venit *he came* longo pòst tempŏre *a long time after.*

Instar *like or equal to* et *and* ergò *for the sake of*, sumpta *being taken* adverbialĭter *as adverbs*, habent *have* genitīvum *a*

genitive case post se *after them:* ut *as,* Ædifĭcant *they build* equum *a horse* divīnâ arte *by the divine assistance* Pallădis *of Pallas* instar montis *as big as a mountain.* Donāri *to be rewarded* ergò *for the sake of* virtūtis *virtue.*

CONJUNCTIONES copulatīvæ *conjunctions copulative* et *and* disjunctīvæ *disjunctive* conjungunt *couple* simĭles casus *the like cases,* modos *moods,* et *and* tempŏra *tenses:* ut *as,* Socrătes, docuit *taught* Xenophontem *Xenophon* et *and* Platōnem *Plato.* Stat *he stands* corpŏre *with his body* recto *upright,* que *and* despĭcit *looks down upon* terras *the earth.* Nec scribit *he neither writes* nec legit *nor reads.*

Nisi *unless* ratio *the reason* variæ constructiōnis *of a different construction* poscat *requires it should be* aliud *otherwise:* ut *as,* Emi *I bought* librum *a book* centussi *for a hundred pence* et *and* pluris *more.* Vixi *I lived* Romæ *at Rome* et *and* Venetiis *at Venice.* Nisi *unless* lactâsses me *you had fed me up* amantem *being in love,* et *and* producĕres *drew me on* falsâ spe *with false hope.*

Quàm *the conjunction* quàm sæpe *oftentimes* intelligĭtur *is understood* post *after* ampliùs *more,* plùs *more,* et *and* minùs *less:* ut *as,* Sunt *there are* ampliùs *more* sex menses *than six months.* Paulò plùs *somewhat more* trecenta vehicŭla *than three hundred carriages* sunt amissa *are lost.* Nix *the snow* nunquam *never* jacuit *lay* alta *deep* minùs *less* quatuor pedes *than four feet.*

Ne, an, num *whether,* posĭta *being put* dubitatīvè *doubtfully,* aut *or* indefinītè *indefinitely,* junguntur *are joined* subjunctīvo *to a subjunctive mood:* ut *as,* Nihil refert *it makes no difference* fecĕrisne *whether you have done it* an *or* persuasĕris *persuaded to it.* Vise *go see,* num *whether* rediĕrit *he be returned.*

Dum, pro *for* dummŏdo *so that* et *and* quousque *until,* postŭlat *requires* subjunctīvum *a subjunctive mood:* ut *as,* Dum *so that* prosim *I may profit* tibi *you.* Dum *until* tertia æstas *the third summer* viderit *shall see* regnantem *him reigning.*

Qui, signifĭcans *signifying* causam *the cause,* exĭgit *requires* subjunctīvum *a subjunctive mood:* ut *as,* Es *you are* stultus *a fool* qui credas *for believing* huic *this fellow.*

Ut, pro *for* postquam *after that,* sicut *as,* et *and* quomŏdo *how,* jungĭtur *is joined* indicatīvo *to an indicative mood:* autem *but* cùm *when* denŏtat *it signifies* quanquàm *although,* utpŏte *for as much as,* vel *or* finālem causam *the final cause,* subjunctīvo *to a subjunctive mood:* ut *as,* Ut *since that* sumus *we are in* Ponto *in Pontus,* Ister *the Danube* frigŏre constĭtit

has stood frozen ter *three times.* Ut *as* tute *you yourself* es *are,* ita *so* censes *you think* omnes *that all* esse *are.* Ut *although* omnia *all things* contingant *should fall out* quæ *which* volo *I would,* non possum *I cannot* levāri *be eased.* Non est fidendum *no trust is to be given* tibi *to you,* ut qui *because* toties fefellĕris *you have so often deceived.* Dave *Davus,* oro te *I entreat you* ut *that* jam *now* redeat *he may return* in viam *into the way.*

Denĭque *lastly* omnes voces *all words* posĭtæ *put* indefinītè *indefinitely,* quales *such as* sunt *are these,* quis *who,* quantus *how great,* quotus *how many, &c.,* postŭlant *require* subjunctīvum *a subjunctive mood:* ut *as,* Video *I see* cui *to what sort of man* scribam *I am writing.* Quantus *how great* assurgat *he rises up* in clypeum *against the enemy's shield;* quo turbĭne *with what a force* torqueat *he hurls* hastam *the lance!*

PRÆPOSITIO *a preposition* subaudīta *understood* interdum *sometimes* facit *makes* ut *that* ablatīvus *an ablative case* addātur *be added:* ut *as,* Habeo *I esteem* te *you* loco *in the place* parentis *of a parent:* id est *that is,* in loco.

Præpositio *a preposition* in compositiōne *in composition* nonnunquam *sometimes* regit *governs* eundem casum *the same case* quem *which* regēbat *it governed* et *also* extra compositiōnem *out of composition:* ut *as,* Detrūdunt *they thrust off* naves *the ships* scopŭlo *from the rock.* Prætereo *I pass by* te *you* insalutātum *unsaluted.*

Verba *verbs* composĭta *compounded* cum *with* à, ab, ad, con, de, è, ex, in, nonnunquam *sometimes* repĕtunt *repeat* easdem præpositiōnes *the same prepositions* cum suo casu *with their case* extra compositiōnem *out of composition,* idque *and that* eleganter *elegantly:* ut *as,* Abstinuērunt *they abstained* à vino *from wine.*

In, pro *for* erga *towards,* contra *against,* ad *to,* et *and* supra *above,* exĭgit *requires* accusatīvum *an accusative case:* ut *as,* Accĭpit *she admits* anĭmum mentémque benignam *kind thoughts and inclinations* in Teucros *towards the Trojans.* Peccem *I should offend* in publĭca commŏda *against the public good.* Hæres *an heir* quærĭtur *is sought* in regnum *for the kingdom.* Imperium *the power* Jovis *of Jupiter* est *is* reges in ipsos *over kings themselves.*

Sub, cùm *when* refertur *it relates* ad tempus *to time,* ferè *commonly* jungĭtur *is joined* accusatīvo *to an accusative case:* ut *as,* Sub id'em tempus *about the same time;* i. e. *that is,* circa, vel *or,* per id'em tempus.

Super, pro *for* ultra *beyond*, apponĭtur *is put with* accusatīvo *an accusative case;* pro *for* de *concerning*, ablatīvo *with an ablative case:* ut *as*, Proferet *he will extend* imperium *the empire* et *both* super Garamantas *beyond the Africans* et *and* Indos *the Indians*. Rogĭtans *enquiring* multa *much* super Priămo *concerning Priam*, multa *much* super Hectŏre *concerning Hector*.

Tenus *as far as* jungĭtur *is joined* ablatīvo *to an ablative case* et *both* singulāri *in the singular number* et *and* plurāli *the plural:* ut *as*, Pube tenus *as high as the groin;* pectorĭbus tenus *up to the breasts*.

At *but* tantùm *only* genitīvo *to a genitive case* plurāli *in the plural number;* et *and* semper sequĭtur *it always follows* casum suum *its case:* ut *as*, Crurum tenus *as far as the legs*.

INTERJECTIONES *interjections* non rarò ponuntur *are often put* sine casu *without a case:* ut *as*, Connixa *having yeaned* relīquit *she left* spem gregis *the hope of the flock*, ah *alas!* silĭce in nudâ *upon the bare flint stones*. Quæ dementia *what madness is this*, malùm *with a mischief!*

O, exclamantis *of one exclaiming*, jungĭtur *is joined* nominatīvo *to a nominative case*, accusatīvo *an accusative*, et *and* vocatīvo *a vocative:* ut *as*, O festus dies *O the joyful day* homĭnis *of mortal man!* O nimium fortunātos agricŏlas *O too fortunate husbandmen* si nôrint *if they knew* sua bona *their own happiness!* O formōse puer *O beautiful boy!* ne crede *trust not* nimiùm *too much* colōri *to your beauty*.

Heu, et *and* proh *alas!* junguntur *are joined* nunc *sometimes* nominatīvo *to a nominative case*, nunc *sometimes* accusatīvo *to an accusative:* ut *as*, Heu piĕtas *ah his piety!* Heu prisca fides *ah the ancient integrity!* Heu stirpem invīsam *ah the odious stock!* Proh Jupĭter *O Jupiter!* tu *thou* homo *man*, adĭgis me *drivest me* ad insaniam *to madness!* Proh fidem *alas the help* deûm *of gods* atque *and* homĭnum *of men!* Item *also*, vocatīvo *to a vocative case:* Proh sancte Jupĭter *O sacred Jupiter!*

Hei, et *and* væ *alas*, junguntur *are joined* datīvo *to a dative case:* ut *as*, Hei mihi *woe is me*, quòd *that* amor *love* est *is* medicabĭlis *curable* nullis herbis *by no herbs!* Væ misĕro mihi *wretched man that I am*, quantâ de spe *from how great hope* decĭdi *am I fallen!*

PROSODY CONSTRUED.

PROSODIA *prosody* est *is* pars *that part* Grammatĭcæ *of Grammar*, quæ *which* docet *teaches* quantitātem *the quantity* syllabārum *of syllables.*

Prosodia *prosody* dividĭtur *is divided* in tres partes *into three parts;* Tonum *the Tone*, Spirĭtum *the Breathing*, et *and* Tempus *the Time:*—that is to say, *for the pronunciation of a long or short syllable.*

Hoc loco *in this place*, visum est nobis *it is thought most proper* tractāre *to treat* tantùm *only* de tempŏre *of time.*

TEMPUS *time* est *is* mensūra *the measure* syllăbæ proferendæ *of a syllable to be uttered.*

Pes *a foot* est *is* constitutio *the placing together* duārum syllabārum *of two syllables* pluriúmve *or more* ex certâ observatiōne *according to the certain observation* tempŏrum, *of the times.*

Dissyllăbus *a foot of two syllables* est *is named* spondæus, *a spondee;* ut *as*, vir-tus, *virtue.*

Trisyllăbus *a foot of three syllables* est *is named* dactўlus, *a dactyl;* ut *as*, scri-bĕ-re, *to write.*

Scansio *scanning* est *is* legitĭma commensuratio *the measuring according to rule* versûs *of a verse* in singŭlos pedes *in every one* (or *each one*) *of the feet.*

Scansiōni *to scanning a verse* accĭdunt *there belong* figūræ *the figures called* Synalœpha, Ecthlipsis, Synærĕsis, Diærĕsis, et *and* Cæsūra.

Synalœpha, est *is* elisio *the striking out* vocālis *of a vowel* in fine *at the end* dictiōnis *of a word* ante altĕram *before another vowel* in initio *at the beginning* sequentis *of the following word:* ut *as*, Crastĭna vita *to-morrow's life* est *is* nimis sera *too late*, vive *live* hodiè *to-day.*

At *but* heu, et *and* ô, nunquam intercipiuntur *are never struck out* (or *cut off*).

Ecthlipsis est *is* quoties *as often as* m *the letter m* perimĭtur *is cut off* cum suâ vocāli *with its vowel*, proxĭmâ dictiōne *the next word* exorsâ *beginning* à vocāli *with a vowel:* ut *as*, Monstrum *a monster*, horrendum *horrible*, informe *mis-shapen*, ingens *vast*, cui lumen ademptum *deprived of sight.*

Synærĕsis, est *is* contractio *the contraction* duārum syllabārum *of two syllables* in unam *into one;* ut *as,* Seu *or whether* alveāria *the hives* texta fuĕrint *were wove* lento vimĭne *of the limber osier.*

Diærĕsis, est *is* ubi *when* ex unâ syllăbâ *of one syllable* dissectâ *being dissected* (or *the letters separated)* duæ *two syllables* fiun *tare made;* ut *as,* Debuĕrant *they ought* evolu-isse *to have unwound* suos fusos *their spindles.*

Cæsūra, est *is* cùm *when* post pedem absolūtum *after a perfect foot* syllăba brevis *a short syllable* extendĭtur *is made long* in fine dictiōnis *at the end of the word:* ut *as,* Inhians *intent upon* pectorĭbus *the breasts* (*of the victims*) consŭlit *she consults* spirantia exta *their panting entrails.*

VERSUS heroĭcus *an heroic verse,* qui *which* dicĭtur etiam *is also called* Hexaměter *an Hexameter,* constat *consists* ex sex pedĭbus *of six feet:* Quintus locus *the fifth place of the verse* peculiarĭter *peculiarly* sibi vindĭcat *claims to itself* dactўlum *a dactyl,* sextus *the sixth place requires* spondæum *a spondee;* relĭqui *the other places* hunc vel illum *have this or that foot* (*either a dactyl or a spondee)* prout volŭmus *even as we will:* ut *as,* Titўre *o Tityrus,* tu *thou* recŭbans *lying along* sub tegmĭne *under the covering* patŭlæ fagi *of a wide-spreading beech-tree.*

Spondæus *a spondee* etiam *also* aliquando *sometimes* reperĭtur *is found* in quinto loco *in the fifth place:* ut *as,* Cara sobŏles *thou dear offspring* deûm *of the gods,* magnum incrementum *the illustrious progeny* Jovis *of Jupiter!*

Ultĭma syllăba *the last syllable* cujuscunque versûs *of every verse* habētur *is accounted* commūnis *common.*

VERSUS elegiăcus *an elegiac verse;* qui et *which also* habet *has* nomen *the name* Pentamĕtri *of Pentameter,* constat *consists* è duplĭci Penthemiměri *of two Penthemimers;* quarum prior *the former of which* comprehendit *contains* duos pedes *two feet,* dactylĭcos *dactyls,* spondiăcos *spondees,* vel *or* alterŭtros *either of them,* cum syllăbâ longâ *with a long syllable:* altĕra *the other Penthemimer* etiam *contains also* duos pedes *two feet,* sed *but* omnĭnò dactylĭcos *always* (*or altogether*) *dactyls,* item *likewise* cum syllăbâ longâ *with a long syllable:* ut *as,* Amor *love* est *is* res *a thing* plena *full* sollicĭti timōris *of anxious fear.*

Of the Quantity of the former Syllables.

I. Vocālis *a vowel* ante duas consonantes *before two consonants,* aut *or* duplĭcem *a double consonant,* in eâdem

dictiōne *in the same word,* est *is* ubīque longa *every where long* positiōne *by position:* ut *as in the words,* ventus *the wind,* axis *an axle-tree,* patrīzo *to do like his father.*

II. Quòd si *but if* consŏnans *a consonant* claudat *ends* priōrem dictiōnem *the former word,* sequente *the following word* item *also* inchoante *beginning* à consonante *with a consonant,* vocālis præcēdens *the vowel going before* etiam *also* longa erit *will be long* positiōne *by position:* ut *as,* Major sum *I am greater* quàm *than* cui *one whom* fortūna *fortune* possit *is able* nocēre *to hurt.*

III. At si *but if* prior dictio *the former word* exeat *ends* in vocālem brevem *in a short vowel,* sequente *the following word* incipiente *beginning* à duābus consonantĭbus *with two consonants,* interdum *sometimes* producĭtur *it is made long,* sed *but* rariùs *very seldom:* ut *as,* Occulta spolia *they brought away the secret spoils* et *and* plures triumphos *often triumphed* de pace *for making peace among themselves.*

IV. Vocālis brevis *a short vowel* ante mutam *before a mute,* sequente liquĭdâ *a liquid following,* reddĭtur *is rendered* commūnis *common;* ut *as in the words,* patris *of a father,* volŭcris *of a bird:* verò *but* longa *a long vowel* non mutātur *is not changed;* ut *as in the words,* arātrum *a plough,* simulācrum *an image.*

VOCALIS *a vowel* ante altĕram *before another vowel* in eâdem dictiōne *in the same word* est *is* ubīque brevis *every where short;* ut *as in the words,* Deus *God,* meus *mine,* tuus *thine,* pius *pious.*

1. Excipias *you may except* genitīvos *the genitive cases* in ius *ending in ius,* habentes *having* secundam formam *the second form or declension* pronomĭnis *of a pronoun;* ut *as,* unĭus *of one,* illĭus *of that,* &c. *and some others;* ubi *where* (or *in which words*) i *the vowel i* reperītur *is found* commūnis *common;* licèt *although* in alterius *in the word* alterius *of another* semper sit *it is always* brevis *short;* in alīus *in the word* alīus *of another,* semper longa *it is always long.*

2. Excipiendi sunt etiam *except likewise* genitīvi *the genitive* et *and* datīvi *the dative cases* quintæ declinatiōnis *of the fifth declension,* ubi e *where the vowel e* inter gemĭnum i *between two i's* longa fit *is made long;* ut *as in the word* faciēi *of a face:* aliōqui non *otherwise not,* ut *as in the words,* rei *of a thing,* spei *of hope,* fidēi *of faith.*

Etiam *also* fi *the syllable fi* in fio *in the word* fio *to be*

made or done est longa *is long*, nisi *unless* e et r *the letters e and r* sequuntur *follow* simul *together*; ut *as* in fiĕrem, fiĕri *to be made* or *done*: Jam *now* omnia *all things* fiunt *are done*, quæ *which* negābam *I denied* posse *were able* fiĕri *to be done*.

Dius *heavenly* habet *has* primam syllăbam *the first syllable* longam *long*; Diāna *the goddess Diana* communem *has the first syllable common*.

Interjectio Ohe *the interjection ohe* habet *has* priōrem syllăbam *the former syllable* communem *common*.

Vocālis *a vowel* ante altĕram *before another* in Græcis dictionĭbus *in Greek words* subinde *now and then* fit longa *is made long*: ut *as*, Dicīte, Pierĭdes *say, O ye Muses*: Respice Laërten *have regard to Laertes*.

Et *and also* in Græcis possessīvis *in Greek possessives*; ut *as*, Ænēïa nutrix *Æneas's nurse*, Rhodopēius Orpheus *Orpheus of Rhodope*.

Omnis diphthongus *every diphthong* longa est *is long* apud Latīnos *with the Latins*; ut *as*, aurum *gold*, neuter *neither*, musæ *of a song, or songs*: nisi *except* sequente vocāli *when a vowel follows*; ut *as*, præīre *to go before*, præustus *burnt at one end*, præamplus *very large*.

DERIVATIVA *derivatives (or words derived of others)* ferè *commonly* sortiuntur *are assigned* eandem quantitātem *the same quantity* cum primitīvis *with their primitives (or the words they are derived from)*: ut *as*, amātor *a lover*, amīcus *a friend*, amabĭlis *amiable*; primâ brevi *the first syllable being short* ab amo *as being derived from the verb* amo, *I love*.

Excipiuntur tamen *except however* pauca *a few words* quæ *which* deducta *being derived* à brevĭbus *from short syllables*, producunt *make long* primam syllăbam *the first syllable*: ut *as*, como comis *to comb or adorn the hair*; à coma *derived from* coma *the hair*; fomes *fuel*, et *and* fomentum *an assuaging plaister*, à *from* foveo *to cherish*; humānus *human, or humane*, ab homo *derived from* homo *a man or woman*; jucundus *pleasant*, à *from* juvo *to delight*; jumentum *a beast of burden*, à *from* juvo *to help*; junior *younger*, à *from* juvĕnis *young*; laterna *a lanthern*, à *from* lateo *to lie hid*; lex legis *a law*, à *from* lego *to read*; mobĭlis *moveable*, à *from* moveo *to move*; nonus *the ninth*, à *from* novem *nine*; rex regis *a king*, regīna *a queen*, à *from* rego *to rule*; sedes *a seat*, à *from* sedeo *to sit*; tegŭla *a tile*, à *from* tego *to cover*;

tragŭla *a javelin,* (*also a drag-net,*) à *from* traho *to draw;* vomer *a ploughshare,* à *from* vomo *to cast up;* vox vocis *a voice,* à *from* voco *to call.*

Et *and* contrà *on the other hand* sunt *there are some words* quæ *which* deducta *though derived* à longis *from primitives of a long syllable,* corripiunt *make short* primam *the first syllable:* ut *as,* arēna *sand,* arista *the beard of corn,* arundo *a reed,* ab *derived from* areo *to be dry;* aruspex *a soothsayer,* ab *from* ara *an altar;* dicax *a jester,* à *from* dico *to speak;* ditio *power,* à *from* ditis *rich;* disertus *eloquent,* à *from* dissĕro *to dispute;* dux ducis *a leader,* à *from* duco *to lead;* fides *faith,* à *from* fio *to be made or done;* fragor *a noise or crash,* fragĭlis *frail,* à *from* frango *to break;* genui *I have begotten,* à *from* gigno *to beget;* lucerna *a candle,* à *from* luceo *to shine;* nato natas *to shoot out,* à *from* natu *to be grown or sprung up;* noto notas *to mark,* à *from* notu *to be known;* posui *I have put,* à *from* pono *to put;* potui *I have been able,* à *from* possum *to be able;* sopor *a sound sleep,* à *from* sopio *to lie asleep.*

[It may here be observed, that, besides the above exceptions, there are some others of either kind, which are left to be observed by the studious in their reading.]

COMPOSITA *compound words* sequuntur *follow* quantitātem *the quantity* simplicium *of their simple words:* ut *as,* à *from* lego legis *to read, comes* perlĕgo *to read through;* à *from* lego legas *to send as an ambassador,* allĕgo *to allege or accuse by messengers;* à *from* potens *powerful,* impŏtens *weak;* à *from* solor *to cheer,* consŏlor *to comfort.*

Tamen *however* hæc brevia *these words having short syllables,* enāta *though derived* à longis *from long syllables,* excipiuntur *are excepted:* ut *as,* dejĕro *to swear a great oath,* pejĕro *to forswear,* à *from* juro *to swear;* innŭba *unmarried,* pronŭba *a bride-maid,* à *from* nubo *to be married.*

OMNE præteritum *every preterperfect tense* dissyllăbum *of two syllables* habet *has* priōrem *the former syllable* longam *long:* ut *as,* legi *I have read,* emi *I have bought,* movi *I have moved.*

1 Tamen *yet* excipias *you should except the words,* bibi *I drank,* dedi *I gave,* scidi *I have cut,* steti *I have stood,* stiti *I have stayed,* tuli *I have borne or suffered,* et *and* fidi, à *from* findo *to cleave.*

2. Geminantia *words that double* primam *the first syllable* præteriti *of the preterperfect tense* habent *have* primam *the first syllable* brevem *short:* ut *as,* cecīdi *I have fallen,* à *from* cædo *to fall;* cecīdi *I have beaten* à *from* cædo *to beat;* didīci *I have learned,* fefelli *I have deceived,* momordi *I have bitten,* pependi *I have weighed,* pupŭgi *I have pricked,* tetendi *I have stretched,* tetigi *I have touched,* totondi *I have sheared,* tutŭdi *I have thumped.*

SUPINUM dissyllăbum *a supine of two syllables* habet *has* priōrem *the former syllable* longam *long:* ut *as,* visum *to see,* latum *to bear or suffer,* lotum *to wash,* mōtum *to move.*

Excipe *except* datum *to give,* itum *to go,* litum *to daub,* quitum *to may or can,* ratum *to suppose,* rutum *to rush,* satum *to sow,* situm *to suffer,* statum *to stop,* et *and* citum à *from* cieo cies *to stir up;* nam *for* citum, à *from* cio cis *to make to go,* quartæ *of the fourth conjugation,* habet *has* priōrem *the former syllable* longam *long.*

I. A FINITA *words ending in a* producuntur *are made long:* ut *as,* ama *love thou,* contra *against,* erga *towards.*

1. Excipias *except,* puta *suppose,* ita *even so,* quia *because,* posteà *afterwards,* eja *well!* item *also* omnes casus *all cases* in a *ending in a,* cujuscunque fuĕrint genĕris *of whatever gender they are,* numĕri *number,* aut *or* declinatiōnis *declension;* præter *except* vocativos *the vocative cases* à Græcis in as *of Greek words ending in as;* ut *as,* O Ænēa *o Æneas,* O Thoma *o Thomas;* et *and* ablativum *the ablative case* primæ declinatiōnis *of the first declension;* ut *as,* musâ *by or with a song.*

2. Numeralia *nouns of number* in ginta *ending in ginta* habent *have* finălem *the last syllable* commūnem *common,* sed *but* frequentiùs *more frequently* longam *long:* ut *as,* triginta *thirty.*

II. Desinentia *words ending in* b, d, t, brevia sunt *are short:* ut *as,* ab *from,* ad *to,* caput *the head.*

III. Desinentia *words ending in c* producuntur *are made long:* ut *as,* ac *and,* sic *so,* et *and* adverbium *the adverb* hic *here.*

Sed *but* duo in c *two ending in c* corripiuntur *are made short:* nec *neither,* et *and* donec *until.*

Tria sunt *there are three* communia *common:* fac *do thou,* pronōmen hic *the pronoun* hic *he,* et *and* neutrum ejus *its*

neuter hoc, modò *so that* non sit *it be not* ablatīvi casûs *of the ablative case.*

IV. Finīta e *words ending in e* brevia sunt *are short:* ut *as,* mare *the sea,* penè *almost,* lege *read thou,* scribe *write thou.*

1. Omnes voces *all words* quintæ inflectiōnis *of the fifth declension* in e *ending in e* excipiendæ sunt *are to be excepted:* ut *as,* fide *the ablative case of* fides *faith,* et *and* die *in the day,* unà cum particŭlis *together with the particles* indè enātis *that are derived of it:* ut *as,* hodie *to-day,* quotidie *daily,* pridie *the day before,* postridie *the day after:* item *also* quare *wherefore,* quadēre *for what cause,* eāre *therefore,* et *and* si qua sunt similia *if there be any of the like sort.*

2. Et item *and also* secundæ persōnæ singulāres *the second persons singular* secundæ conjugatiōnis *of the second conjugation:* ut *as,* doce *teach,* move *move.*

3. Etiam *also* monosyllăba *monosyllables* in e *ending in e* producuntur *are made long;* ut *as,* me *me,* te *thee,* se *himself or themselves:* præter *except* conjunctiōnes enclitĭcas *the enclitic conjunctions,* que *and,* ne *whether,* ve *or.*

4. Quin et *and moreover* adverbia *adverbs* in e *ending in e,* deducta *derived* ab adjectīvis *from adjectives* secundæ declinatiōnis *of the second declension,* habent *have* e *the letter e* longum *long:* ut *as,* pulchrè *beautifully,* doctè *learnedly,* valdè pro *for* valĭdè *mightily.*

5. Quibus *to which the adverbs* fermè, et *and* ferè *almost,* accēdunt *are added:* tamen *yet* benè *well,* et *and* malè *ill,* omnīnò corripiuntur *are always made short.*

6. Postrēmò *lastly,* quæ *such words as* scribuntur *are written* à Græcis per *η with the Greek letter η* (*or long ē*) producuntur *are long* natūrâ *by nature,* cujuscunque fuĕrint casûs *of whatever case they are,* genĕris *gender,* aut *or* numĕri *number:* ut *as,* Lethe *the river so called,* Anchīse *a proper name,* cete *whales,* Tempe *the name of a pleasant valley in Thessaly.*

V. Finīta i *words ending in i* longa sunt *are long:* ut *as,* domĭni *lords,* magistri *masters,* amāri *to be loved.*

Præter *except* mihi *to me,* tibi *to thee,* sibi *to himself or themselves,* ubi *where,* ibi *there;* quæ *which words* sunt *are* communia *common:* verò *but* nisi *except,* et *and* quasi *as if,* corripiuntur *are made short.*

Cujus etiam sortis *of which sort likewise* sunt *are* datīvi *the dative* et *and* vocatīvi *the vocative cases* Græcōrum *of Greek words,* quorum genitīvus singulāris *the genitive case*

singular of which words exit *ends* in *os* breve in os, *a short termination:* ut *as,* datīvi *the dative cases,* Minoĭdi, Pallădi, Phyllĭdi; vocatīvi *the vocative cases,* Alexi, Amarylli, Daphni, *all proper names.*

VI. Finīta l *words ending in l* corripiuntur *are made short:* ut *as,* anĭmal *an animal,* Annĭbal *a proper name,* mel *honey,* pugil *a champion,* consul *a consul.*

Præter *except the words* nil, contractum *contracted* à *of* nihil *nothing,* sal *salt,* et *and* sol *the sun:* et *and* Hebræa quædam *certain Hebrew words* in el *ending in el:* ut *as,* Michael, Gabriel, Raphael, *the names of Angels,* Daniel *the name of the prophet.*

VII. Finīta n *words ending in n* producuntur *are made long:* ut *as,* Pæan *a name of Apollo,* Hymen *the God of marriage,* quin *but,* Xenŏphon *a proper name,* non *not,* dæmon *the devil.*

Excĭpe *except* forsan forsĭtan *perhaps,* an *whether,* tamen *yet,* attămen *but yet,* veruntămen *nevertheless,* et *and* in *the preposition in.*

Et his *and to these* accēdunt *are added* illæ voces *those words* quæ *which* patiuntur *suffer* apocŏpen *the figure apocope:* ut *as,* viden' *do you see?* audin' *do you hear?* etiam *also* exin *from henceforth,* subin *now and then,* dein *afterwards,* proin *therefore.*

In an quoque *words also ending in an* à nominatīvis *from nominative cases* in a *ending in a:* ut *as,* nom. Iphigenīa, Ægīna, accusatīvo *in the accusative case* Iphigenīan, Ægīnan, *proper names of women:* Nam *for* in an *words ending in an* à nominatīvis *from nominative cases* in as *ending in as* producuntur *are made long:* ut *as,* nominativo *in the nominative case* Ænēas, Marsyas; accusativo *in the accusative case* Ænēan, Marsyan, *proper names.*

Item *also* nomĭna *nouns* in en *ending in en,* quorum genitīvus *whose genitive case* habet *has* inis, correptum *made short:* ut *as,* carmen *a poem,* crimen *a fault,* pecten *a comb,* tibīcen *a player on the flute, make* ĭnis *in the genitive case.*

Quædam etiam *some nouns also,* in *in* per i *ending in* in *with an* i, ut *as,* Alexin; et *and* in *yn* per y *ending in* yn *with a* y, ut *as,* Ityn; *both proper names.*

Græca etiam *Greek words also* in on *ending in on* per *o* parvum *with little o,* cujuscunque fuĕrint casūs *of whatever case they are:* ut *as,* nominatīvo *in the nominative case* Ilion *the city Troy,* Pelion *a hill in Thessaly;* accusatīvo *in the accusative case,* Caucăson *the name of a mountain,* Pylon *the name of a town.*

VIII. O finīta *words ending in o* communia sunt *are common:* ut *as,* dico *I say,* virgo *a virgin,* porro *moreover:* Sic *so* docendo *in teaching,* legendo *in reading,* et alia gerundia *and other gerunds* in do *ending in do.*

Sed *but* oblīqui casus *oblique cases* in o *ending in o* semper *always* producuntur *are made long:* ut *as,* datīvo *in the dative case* domĭno *to a lord or master,* servo *to a servant;* ablatīvo *in the ablative case* templo *from the temple,* damno *with loss.*

Et *and* adverbia *adverbs* derivāta *derived* ab adjectīvis *from adjectives:* ut *as,* tantò *by so much,* quantò *by how much,* liquĭdò *clearly,* falsò *falsely,* primò *first,* manifestò *manifestly,* &c. *and the like;* præter *except* sedŭlò *diligently,* mutuò *mutually,* crebrò *frequently,* quæ *which words* sunt *are* communia *common:* cetĕrùm *but* modò *now or only* et *and* quomŏdo *how* semper *always* corripiuntur *are made short.*

Quoque *likewise,* citò *soon,* ut et *as also* ambo *both,* duo *two,* ego *I,* atque *and* homo *a man or woman,* vix leguntur producta *are scarcely ever read long.*

Tamen *however* monosyllăba *monosyllables* in o *ending in o* producuntur *are made long:* ut *as,* do *I give,* sto *I stand.*

Item *also* Græca *Greek words* per *ω with great o,* cujusmŏdi fuĕrint casûs *of whatever case they are:* ut *as,* nominatīvo *in the nominative case,* Sappho, Dido; genitīvo *in the genitive case,* Androgeo, Apollo; accusatīvo *in the accusative case,* Atho, Apollo, *all proper names.* Sic et *and so likewise* ergò (*when put*) pro *for* causâ *the sake of.*

IX. Finīta r *words ending in r* corripiuntur *are made short:* ut *as,* Cæsar *a proper name,* per *by,* vir *a man,* uxor *a wife,* turtur *a turtle.*

Autem *but these words* producuntur *are made long,* far *bread-corn,* Lar *a household god,* Nar *the river so called,* ver *the spring,* fur *a thief,* cur *why;* quoque *also* par *equal to or like* cum compositis *with its compounds,* ut *as,* compar *a companion,* impar *unequal,* dispar *unlike.*

Græca etiam *also Greek words* in er *ending in er,* quæ *which* illis *among them* desĭnunt *end* in ηρ *in the long ē before r:* ut *as,* aër *the air,* crater *a cup,* character *a mark or sign,* æther *the sky,* soter *a deliverer:* præter *except* pater *a father* et *and* mater *a mother,* quæ *which* apud Latīnos *with Latin authors* habent *have* ultĭmam *the last syllable* brevem *short.*

X. Finīta s *words ending in s* habent *have* pares termina-

tiōnes *the like terminations* cum numĕro *with the number* vocalium *of the vowels:* nempe *namely,* as, es, is, os, us.

1. AS Finīta *words ending in as* producuntur *are made long:* ut *as,* amas *thou lovest,* Musas *the Muses,* majestas *majesty,* bonĭtas *goodness.*

Præter *except* Græca *some Greek words,* quorum genitīvus singulāris *whose genitive case singular* exit in dos *ends in dos:* ut *as,* Arcas, Pallas, *proper names,* genitīvo *in the genitive case* Arcădos, Pallădos: et *also* præter *except* accusatīvos plurāles *the accusative cases plural* nomĭnum crescentium *of nouns increasing:* ut *as,* heros heroos *a hero,* Phyllis Phyllĭdos *a proper name;* accusatīvo plurāli *in the accusative plural,* herōas, Phyllĭdas.

2. Finīta es *words ending in es* longa sunt *are long:* ut *as,* Anchīses *the father of Æneas,* sedes *thou sittest,* doces *thou teachest,* patres *fathers.*

Nomĭna in es *nouns ending in es* tertiæ inflectiōnis *of the third declension,* quæ *which nouns* corripiunt *make short* penultĭmam *the last syllable save one* genitīvi crescentis *of the genitive case increasing* excipiuntur *are excepted:* ut *as,* miles *a soldier,* seges *standing corn,* dives *rich.* Sed *but* aries *a ram,* abies *a fir-tree,* paries *the wall of a house,* Ceres *the goddess of corn,* et *and* pes *a foot,* unà cum compositis *together with its compounds,* ut *as,* bipes *having two feet,* tripes *having three,* longa sunt *are long.*

Quoque *also* es *thou art,* à *from* sum *I am,* unà cum compositis *together with its compounds,* corripĭtur *is made short:* ut *as,* potes *thou art able,* ades *thou art present,* prodes *thou profitest,* obes *thou hinderest:* quibus *to which* penes *in the power of* potest *may* adjungi *be added.*

Item *also* neutra *words of the neuter gender,* et *and* nominatīvi plurāles *the nominative cases plural* Græcōrum *of certain Greek words:* ut *as,* hippomănes *a raging humour in mares,* cacoēthes *an ill habit,* Cyclōpes *giants so called,* Naïădes *fairies of rivers and fountains.*

3. Finīta is *words ending in is* brevia sunt *are short:* ut *as,* Paris *a proper name,* panis *bread,* tristis *sorrowful,* hilăris *merry.*

Excĭpe *except* oblīquos casus plurāles *the oblique cases plural* in is *ending in is,* qui *which* producuntur *are made long:* ut *as,* musis *the dative and ablative case plural* à *of* musa *a muse or song,* mensis, à *of* mensa *a table,* domĭnis *lords,* templis *temples,* et *and* quīs, pro *for* quibus *whom:* *item also* producentia *such words as make long* penultĭmam

the last syllable but one genitīvi *crescentis of the genitive case increasing*: ut *as*, Samnis *a Samnite*, Salămis *an isle by Athens*; genitīvo *in the genitive case*, Samnītis, Salamīnis.

Adde huc *add to this place* quæ *such words as* desĭnunt in is *end in is*, contracta *being contracted* ex eis *from the diphthong ëis*, sive Græca *whether they are Greek*, sive *or* Latīna *Latin*, cujuscunque numĕri *and of whatever number* aut *or* casûs *case* fuĕrint *they may be*; ut *as*, Simois *a river in Troy*, Pyrois *one of the horses of the sun*, partis *parts*, omnis *all*; e, *from the words* Symoeis, Pyroeis, parteis, omneis, *being taken away*.

Et item *and also* omnia monosyllăba *all monosyllables*: ut *as*, vis *strength*, lis *strife*: præter *except* is *he* et *and* quis *who* nominatīvos *in the nominative case*, et *and* bis *twice* apud Ovidium *in Ovid*.

Istis *to these* accēdunt *are added* secundæ persōnæ singulāres *the second persons singular* verbōrum *of verbs* in is *ending in is*, quorum secundæ persōnæ plurāles *whose second persons plural* desĭnunt in itis *end in itis*, penultĭmâ *the last syllable but one* productâ *being made long*; unà cum futūris *together with the future tense* subjunctīvi *of the subjunctive (or the potential) mood* in ris *ending in ris*; ut *as*, audis *thou hearest*, velis *thou mayst be willing*, dedĕris *thou shalt give*; pluralĭter *in the plural number*, audītis, velītis, dedĕrītis.

4. Os finīta *words ending in os* producuntur *are made long*: ut *as*, honos *honour*, nepos *a nephew*, domĭnos *lords*, servos *servants*.

Præter *except* compos *he that has ability or power in something*, impos *that is unable, or not having power*, et *and* os ossis *a bone*: et *and* Græca *Greek words* per o parvum *with little o*; ut *as*, Delos *an isle in the Ægean sea*, chaos *a confused heap of all things*, Pallădos *the genitive case of* Pallas *Minerva*, Phyllĭdos *the genitive case of* Phyllis *a proper name*.

5. Us finīta *words ending in us* corripiuntur *are made short*: ut *as*, famŭlus *a man-servant*, regius *royal*, tempus *time*, amāmus *we love*.

Producentia *words that make long* penultĭmam *the last syllable but one* genitīvi crescentis *of the genitive case increasing* excipiuntur *are excepted*: ut *as*, salus *health*, tellus *the earth*, genitīvo *in the genitive case* salūtis, tellūris: etiam *also* omnes voces *all words* quartæ inflectiōnis *of the fourth declension* in us *ending in us* sunt longæ *are long*, præter *except* nominatīvum *the nominative* et *and* vocatīvum

the vocative case singulāres *in the singular number:* ut *as,* genitīvo singulāri *in the genitive case singular* manûs *of a hand;* nominatīvo, accusatīvo, vocatīvo plurāli *in the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases plural* manus *hands.*

Etiam *also* monosyllăba *monosyllables* accēdunt *are added* his *to these:* ut *as,* crus *the leg from the knee to the ancle,* thus *frankincense,* mus *a mouse,* sus *a sow:* et item *and also* Græca *Greek words* per *ovς* diphthongum *ending with the diphthong ous,* cujuscunque fuĕrint casûs *of whatever case they are:* ut *as,* nominatīvo *in the nominative case* Panthus, Melampus, *proper names;*—genitīvo *in the genitive case,* Sapphûs, Cliûs, *proper names:*—Atque *and* nomen *the name* Iēsus *Jesus* venerandum *to be reverenced* piis cunctis *by all godly people.*

XI. Postrēmo *lastly* u finīta omnia *all words ending in u* producuntur *are made long:* ut *as,* manu *the ablative case of* manus *a hand,* genu *a knee,* amātu *to be loved,* diu *a long time.*

CORRIGENDA.

Page 56, line 14, for *antīquus* read *antĭquus.*
— 80, rule 3, for *prepositione* read *præpositĭone.*
— — ——— — *proposition* read *preposition.*
— 82, ——— *for* copiam *read* copiam.
— 85, line 15, for *sedesĕras* read *se desĕras.*
— 102, rule 1, *for* accusatīvi *read* accusative.
— 104, note 67, *for* forum *read* focum.
— — ——— for *Note* 66, read *Note* 51.
— 106, note 70, *for* Hensinger *read* Heusinger.
— 107, line 11, for *ultra* read *alta.*
— 118, rule 2, for *prē* read *prĕ.*

STEWART AND MURRAY, PRINTERS, OLD BAILEY.

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE Author of the New Eton Grammar begs to announce, that at the particular suggestion of many Schoolmasters, whose favourable opinion of this Grammar in MS. chiefly induced its Publication, he is preparing for the Press the following Works:—

I. THE NEW ETON EXAMINER, or Questions on the Eton Latin Introduction as well as the New Eton Grammar.

Since the *New Eton Examiner* will contain Questions on a great variety of matter which is not to be found in any Edition of the Eton Latin Introduction, it is proposed to distinguish all such Questions by an asterisk; and likewise to *give the Answers* to them, for the use of those who have not adopted the New Eton Grammar.

II. THE NEW ETON PRAXIS, being a *new and complete* Series of Latin Exercises, on an improved Plan, adapted to the most popular Grammars.